

Introduction to Stochastic Processes, Fall 2019

## 随机过程引论笔记

何憾<sup>❶</sup>

版本 1.0.0 Beta

<sup>❶</sup>访问我的[个人主页](#), 查看其他笔记

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Discrete-time Markov chains</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	Introductions	1
1.1.1	Definition and basic properties	1
1.1.2	Multistep transition probabilities	3
1.1.3	Class structure	4
1.2	First step analysis	7
1.2.1	Hitting probabilities	7
1.2.2	Mean hitting times	11
1.3	Strong Markov property	15
1.4	Recurrence and transience	21
1.4.1	Decomposing orbit by excursions	21
1.4.2	Visits number and recurrence	23
1.4.3	Absorption probability test	25
1.5	Invariant distributions	31
1.5.1	Definitions and examples	31
1.5.2	Existence and uniqueness of invariant measures	34
1.5.3	Existence and uniqueness of invariant distributions	38
1.6	Time reversal and detailed balance condition	42
1.7	Ergodic theorem	45
1.8	Convergence to equilibrium	53
1.8.1	Periodicity	53
1.8.2	Limiting behavior of $p_{ij}^{(n)}$	57

<b>2</b>	<b>Continuous-time Markov chains</b>	<b>64</b>
2.1	Right Continuous random processes . . . . .	64
2.2	Poisson processes . . . . .	71
2.2.1	Compound Poisson Processes . . . . .	78
2.2.2	Thinning . . . . .	79
2.2.3	Superposition . . . . .	82
2.2.4	Conditioning . . . . .	82
2.3	Birth processes . . . . .	84
2.4	Jump chain and holding times . . . . .	91
2.4.1	Construct a Markov chain . . . . .	93
2.4.2	Explosion . . . . .	95
2.5	Forward and backward equations . . . . .	97
2.6	Appendix . . . . .	110
<b>3</b>	<b>Continuous-time Markov chains(II)</b>	<b>115</b>
3.1	Basic properties . . . . .	115
3.1.1	Class structure . . . . .	115
3.1.2	Hitting probabilities . . . . .	116
3.1.3	Hitting times . . . . .	117
3.2	Recurrence and transience . . . . .	119
3.3	Invariant distributions . . . . .	123
3.3.1	Existence and uniqueness of invariant measures . . . . .	124
3.3.2	Existence and uniqueness of invariant distributions . . . . .	125
3.3.3	Jump chain . . . . .	127
3.4	Time reversal . . . . .	133
3.5	Long-run behavior . . . . .	135
3.5.1	Ergodic theorem . . . . .	135
3.5.2	Convergence to equilibrium . . . . .	137
3.6	Queues and queueing networks . . . . .	139

# Chapter 1

## Discrete-time Markov chains

In this note, we denote by  $\mathbb{N}$  all the non-negative integers, i.e.,  $\mathbb{N} = \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ . Denote by  $\mathbb{N}_+$  all the positive integer. We work throughout with a probability space  $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P})$ .

### 1.1 Introductions

#### 1.1.1 Definition and basic properties

Let  $I$  be a countable set. Each  $i \in I$  is called a state and  $I$  is called the state-space. We say that  $\lambda = (\lambda_i)_{i \in I}$  is a *measure* on  $I$  if  $0 \leq \lambda_i < \infty$  for all  $i \in I$ . If in addition the total mass  $\sum_{i \in I} \lambda_i$  equals 1, then we call  $\lambda$  a *distribution*.

Recall that a random variable  $X$  with values in  $I$  is a function  $X : \Omega \rightarrow I$ . If we set

$$\lambda_i = \mathbb{P}(X = i) \quad \text{for each } i \in I$$

Then  $\lambda$  defines a *distribution*, the distribution of  $X$ . We think of  $X$  as modelling a random state which takes the value  $i$  with probability  $\lambda_i$ .

We say that a matrix  $P = (p_{ij})_{i,j \in I}$  is **stochastic** if every row  $(p_{ij})_{j \in I}$  is a distribution. We shall now formalize the rules for a Markov chain by a

definition in terms of the corresponding matrix  $P$ .

We say  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is Markov chain with **initial distribution**  $\lambda$  and **transition matrix**  $P$ , if  $X_0$  has distribution  $\lambda$  and for any  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , conditional on  $X_n = i$ ,  $X_{n+1}$  has distribution  $(p_{ij})_{j \in I}$  and is independent of  $X_0, \dots, X_{n-1}$ . More explicitly, these conditions state that

- (i) for any  $i \in I$ ,  $\mathbb{P}(X_0 = i) = \lambda_i$ .
- (ii) for any  $n \geq 1$  and  $j, i, i_0, \dots, i_{n-1}$  in  $I$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}(X_{n+1} = j \mid X_n = i, X_0 = i_0, \dots, X_{n-1} = i_{n-1}) \\ = \mathbb{P}(X_{n+1} = j \mid X_n = i) = p_{ij}. \end{aligned}$$

We say that  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is  $\text{Markov}(\lambda, P)$  for short. In formulating (ii) we have restricted our attention to the **temporally homogeneous** case in which the transition probability  $\mathbb{P}(X_{n+1} = j \mid X_n = i)$  does not depend on the time  $n$ .

It is in terms of properties (i) and (ii) that most real-world examples are seen to be Markov chains. But mathematically the following result appears to give a more comprehensive description, and it is the key to some later calculations.

**Theorem 1.1.** *A discrete-time random process  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is  $\text{Markov}(\lambda, P)$  if and only if for any  $n \geq 1$  and  $i_1, \dots, i_n \in I$ ,*

$$\mathbb{P}(X_0 = i_1, X_1 = i_2, \dots, X_n = i_n) = \lambda_{i_1} p_{i_1 i_2} p_{i_2 i_3} \dots p_{i_{n-1} i_n}.$$

*Proof.* Note that for any  $n \geq 1$  and  $i_0, \dots, i_{n+1}$  in  $I$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}(X_{n+1} = i_{n+1} \mid X_0 = i_1, \dots, X_n = i_n) \\ = \frac{\mathbb{P}(X_0 = i_1, \dots, X_n = i_n, X_{n+1} = i_{n+1})}{\mathbb{P}(X_0 = i_1, \dots, X_n = i_n)} = p_{i_n i_{n+1}}. \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

The next result reinforces the idea that Markov chains have no memory. We write  $\delta_i = (\delta_{ij})_{j \in I}$  for the unit mass at  $i$ , where

$$\delta_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } i = j \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

**Theorem 1.2 (Markov property).** *Let  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be Markov( $\lambda, P$ ). Then, conditional on  $X_m = i$ ,  $(X_{m+n})_{n \geq 0}$  is Markov( $\delta_i, P$ ), and is independent of the random variables  $X_0, \dots, X_m$ .*

*Proof.* It suffices to show that for any event  $A \in \sigma(X_0, \dots, X_m)$ , and  $i_m, \dots, i_{m+n}$  in  $I$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}(\{X_m = i_m, \dots, X_{m+n} = i_{m+n}\} \cap A \mid X_m = i) \\ = \delta_{ii_m} p_{i_m i_{m+1}} \cdots p_{i_{m+n-1} i_{m+n}} \mathbb{P}(A \mid X_m = i) \end{aligned} \quad (1.1)$$

Since  $\cup_{n=1}^{\infty} \sigma(X_m, \dots, X_{m+n})$  is a  $\pi$ -system generating  $\sigma(X_{m+n})_{n \geq 0}$ , (1.1) implies the desired result. By the same reason, we only need to consider the case of elementary events

$$A = \{X_0 = i_1, \dots, X_m = i_m\}.$$

Note that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}(X_0 = i_1, \dots, X_{m+n} = i_{m+n}) \\ = \delta_{ii_m} p_{i_m i_{m+1}} \cdots p_{i_{m+n-1} i_{m+n}} \times \mathbb{P}(X_0 = i_1, \dots, X_m = i_m), \end{aligned}$$

Which follows from [Theorem 1.1](#). □

### 1.1.2 Multistep transition probabilities

Assume  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is Markov chain with transition matrix  $P$ . The transition probability  $p_{ij} = P(X_{n+1} = j \mid X_n = i)$  gives the probability of going from  $i$  to  $j$  in one step. Our goal in this section is to compute the probability of going from  $i$  to  $j$  in  $n$  steps:

$$p_{ij}^{(n)} = \mathbb{P}(X_{n+m} = j \mid X_m = i)$$

By Markov property, the definition above is independent of  $m$ . We denote  $P^{(n)} := (p_{ij}^{(n)})_{i,j \in I}$ , and call it the  $n$  step transition matrix.

**Proposition 1.3 (Chapman-Kolmogorov equation).** *For any  $n, m \in \mathbb{N}_+$ ,  $P^{(m+n)} = P^{(m)} P^{(n)}$ . In other words, for any  $i, j \in I$ ,*

$$p_{ij}^{(m+n)} = \sum_{k \in I} p_{ik}^{(m)} p_{kj}^{(n)}.$$

*Proof.* We do this by breaking things down according to the state at time  $m$ .

$$\mathbb{P}_i(X_{m+n} = j) = \sum_{k \in I} \mathbb{P}_i(X_m = k) \mathbb{P}_i(X_{m+n} = j \mid X_m = k)$$

By Markov property,  $\mathbb{P}_i(X_{m+n} = j \mid X_m = k) = p_{kj}^{(n)}$ , thus we get the C-K equation.  $\square$

Note that  $P^{(1)} = P$ , by induction we get:

**Corollary 1.4.** *For all  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ ,  $P^{(n)} = P^n$ . In other words, for any  $i, j \in I$ ,*

$$p_{ij}^{(n)} = \sum_{i_1, \dots, i_{n-1} \in I} p_{ii_1} p_{i_1 i_2} \cdots p_{i_{n-1} j}.$$

**Corollary 1.5.** *Let  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be Markov( $\lambda, P$ ), then for any  $n$  the distribution of  $X_n$  is  $\lambda P^n$ , where we regard distributions (and measures) as row vectors whose components are indexed by  $I$ .*

### 1.1.3 Class structure

It is sometimes possible to break a Markov chain into smaller pieces, each of which is relatively easy to understand, and which together give an understanding of the whole. This is done by identifying the communicating classes of the chain.

Let  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be a Markov chain with transition matrix  $P$ . Define the **hitting time** of state  $j$  is a random variable  $\Omega \rightarrow \{0, 1, 2, \dots\} \cup \{\infty\}$  and given by

$$\tau_j := \inf\{n \geq 0 : X_n = j\}.$$

where we agree that the infimum of the empty set  $\emptyset$  is  $\infty$ .

We say that  $i$  **leads to**  $j$  and write  $i \rightarrow j$  if

$$\mathbb{P}_i(\tau_j < \infty) > 0.$$

We say  $i$  **communicates with**  $j$  and write  $i \leftrightarrow j$  if both  $i \rightarrow j$  and  $j \rightarrow i$ .

**Proposition 1.6.** *For distinct states  $i$  and  $j$ ,  $i$  leads to  $j$  is and only if  $p_{ij}^{(n)} > 0$  for some  $n \geq 0$ .*

*Proof.* Observe that for given  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,

$$p_{ij}^{(n)} \leq \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_j < \infty) \leq \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_{ij}^{(n)}.$$

Then the desired result follows. □

Clearly, from [Proposition 1.6](#) we see that  $i \rightarrow j$  and  $j \rightarrow k$  imply  $i \rightarrow k$ . Also  $i \rightarrow i$  for any state  $i$ . So “ $\leftrightarrow$ ” satisfies the conditions for an *equivalence relation* on  $I$ , and thus partitions  $I$  into **communicating classes**.

**Definition 1.1.** We say that a nonempty set  $A \subset I$  is **closed** if it is impossible to get out, i.e., for any  $i \in A$ ,  $i \rightarrow j$  implies that  $j \in A$ . A state  $i \in I$  is **absorbing** if  $\{i\}$  is a closed class.

**Remark.** It's easy to see that  $A \subset I$  be closed, then for any communicating class  $C$ , either  $C \subset A$  or  $C \cap A = \emptyset$ .

**Definition 1.2.** A chain or transition matrix  $P$  is called **irreducible**, if  $I$  is a single communicating class, i.e., any two state communicate with each other.



**Proposition 1.7.**  *$I$  is irreducible if and only if all the nonempty proper subset of  $I$  is not closed.*

*Proof.* If  $A \subsetneq I$  is closed, pick  $i \in I \setminus A$  and  $j \in A$ , then  $[i] \cap [j] = \emptyset$ .  $I$  has at least two communicating class, so is reducible.

If  $I$  is irreducible, for any nonempty proper subset  $A$ . Pick any  $i \notin A$ ,  $j \in A$ , since  $I$  is irreducible,  $i$  leads to  $j$ . Thus  $A$  is not closed.  $\square$

The advantage of closed set is that we can reduce the state space. Suppose  $A$  is closed, then for all  $i \in A$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}_i(X_n \in A, \forall n \in \mathbb{N}) = 1.$$

Thus  $P|_A = (p_{ij})_{i,j \in A}$  is a transition matrix. If  $\mathbb{P}(X_0 \in A) = 1$ , then, in fact,  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is a Markov chain with transition matrix  $P|_A$ . In addition, if  $A$  is a class, then  $P|_A$  is irreducible.

## EXERCISE

¶ **EXERCISE 1.1.** Show that every transition matrix on a finite state-space has at least one closed communicating class. Find an example of a transition matrix with no closed communicating class.

## 1.2 First step analysis

Let  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be a Markov chain with transition matrix  $P$ . The **hitting time** of  $A \subset I$  is the random variable  $\tau_A : \Omega \rightarrow \{0, 1, 2, \dots\} \cup \{\infty\}$  given by

$$\tau_A = \inf \{n \geq 0 : X_n \in A\} ,$$

where we agree that the infimum of the empty set  $\emptyset$  is  $\infty$ . The probability starting from  $i$  that  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  ever hits  $A$  is then

$$h_i = \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A < \infty) .$$

When  $A$  is a closed class,  $h_i$  is called the absorption probability. The mean time taken for  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  to reach  $A$  is given by

$$t_i = \mathbb{E}_i(\tau_A) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} n \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A = n) + \infty \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A = \infty) .$$

We shall often write less formally

$$h_i = \mathbb{P}_i(\text{hit } A), \quad t_i = \mathbb{E}_i(\text{time to hit } A) .$$

### 1.2.1 Hitting probabilities

**Theorem 1.8.** *The vector of hitting probabilities  $(h_i)_{i \in I}$  is the minimal non-negative solution to the system of linear equations*

$$\begin{cases} h_i = 1, & \text{for } i \in A. \\ h_i = \sum_{j \in I} p_{ij} h_j, & \text{for } i \notin A. \end{cases} \quad (1.2)$$

(Minimality means that if  $x = (x_i)_{i \in I}$  is another solution with  $x_i \geq 0$  for all  $i$ , then  $x_i \geq h_i$  for all  $i$ .)

*Proof.* First we show that  $(h_i)_{i \in I}$  satisfies (1.2). Clearly, if  $X_0 = i \in A$ , then  $\tau_A = 0$ , so  $h_i = 1$ .

If  $X_0 = i \notin A$ , then  $\tau_A \geq 1$ ,

$$h_i = \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A < \infty) = \sum_{j \in I} p_{ij} \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A < \infty \mid X_1 = j) ,$$

by the Markov property

$$\mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A < \infty \mid X_1 = j) = \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A - 1 < \infty \mid X_1 = j) = \mathbb{P}_j(\tau_A < \infty) = h_j.$$

Thus when  $i \notin A$ ,

$$h_i = \sum_{j \in I} p_{ij} h_j.$$

This method is called sometimes *first step analysis*.

Suppose now that  $x = (x_i)_{i \in I}$  is any solution to (1.2). Then  $h_i = x_i = 1$  for  $i \in A$ . For  $i \notin A$ ,

$$x_i = \sum_{j \in I} p_{ij} x_j = \sum_{j \in A} p_{ij} + \sum_{j \notin A} p_{ij} x_j$$

Substitute for  $x_j$  to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} x_i &= \sum_{j \in A} p_{ij} + \sum_{j \notin A} p_{ij} \left( \sum_{k \in A} p_{jk} + \sum_{k \notin A} p_{jk} x_k \right) \\ &= \mathbb{P}_i(X_1 \in A) + \mathbb{P}_i(X_1 \notin A, X_2 \in A) + \sum_{j \notin A} \sum_{k \notin A} p_{ij} p_{jk} x_k. \end{aligned}$$

By repeated substitution for  $x$  in the final term we obtain after  $n$  steps

$$\begin{aligned} x_i &= \mathbb{P}_i(X_1 \in A) + \cdots + \mathbb{P}_i(X_1 \notin A, \dots, X_{n-1} \notin A, X_n \in A) \\ &\quad + \sum_{j_1 \notin A} \cdots \sum_{j_n \notin A} p_{ij_1} p_{j_1 j_2} \cdots p_{j_{n-1} j_n} x_{j_n}. \end{aligned}$$

Now if  $x$  is non-negative, so is the last term on the right, and the remaining terms sum to  $\mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A \leq n)$ . So  $x_i \geq \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A \leq n)$  for all  $n$  and then

$$x_i \geq \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A \leq n) = \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A < \infty) = h_i. \quad \square$$

**Remark.** In fact, using first step analysis, we have

$$\sum_{k \in I} p_{ik} \mathbb{P}_k(\tau_A < \infty) = \mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_A < \infty), \quad \text{for all } i \in I.$$

where  $\sigma_A := \inf\{n \geq 1 : X_n \in A\}$ , is called **the first passage time of  $A$** .

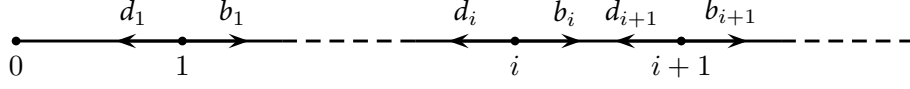


Figure 1.1: birth-death chain

¶ *EXAMPLE 1.2* (Birth-death chain). Consider the Markov chain with diagram in [Figure 1.1](#) where, for  $i = 1, 2, \dots$ , we have  $0 < b_i = 1 - d_i < 1$ . Let  $p_{01} = 1$ . we wish to calculate the absorption probability starting from  $i$ . Such a chain may serve as a model for the size of a population, recorded each time it changes,  $b_i$  being the probability that we get a birth before a death in a population of size  $i$ . Then  $h_i = \mathbb{P}_i(\text{hit } 0)$  is the *extinction probability* starting from  $i$ .

We write down the usual system of equations

$$\begin{aligned} h_0 &= 1 \\ h_i &= b_i h_{i+1} + d_i h_{i-1}, \quad \text{for } i = 1, 2, \dots \end{aligned}$$

This recurrence relation has variable coefficients so the usual technique fails. But consider  $u_i = h_{i-1} - h_i$ , then  $b_i u_{i+1} = d_i u_i$ , so

$$u_{i+1} = \left( \frac{d_i}{b_i} \right) u_i = \left( \frac{d_i d_{i-1} \cdots d_1}{b_i b_{i-1} \cdots b_1} \right) u_1 = \gamma_i u_1$$

where the final equality defines  $\gamma_i$  for  $i \geq 1$ . Then  $u_1 + \cdots + u_i = h_0 - h_i$ , so

$$h_i = 1 - u_1 (\gamma_0 + \cdots + \gamma_{i-1}) = 1 - R_{i-1}$$

where  $\gamma_0 = 1$ , and where the final equality defines  $R_{i-1}$ . At this point  $u_1$  remains to be determined.

- (i) In the case  $R := \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \gamma_i = \infty$ , the restriction  $0 \leq h_i \leq 1$  forces  $u_1 = 0$  and  $h_i = 1$  for all  $i \geq 0$ .

- (ii) But if  $R = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \gamma_i < \infty$ , then we can take  $u_1 > 0$  so long as  $h_i \geq 0$ , that is  $u_1 \leq \frac{1}{R}$ . Thus the minimal non-negative solution occurs when  $u_1 = \frac{1}{R}$  and then

$$h_i = 1 - \frac{R_i}{R}$$

In this case, for  $i = 1, 2, \dots$ , we have  $h_i < 1$ , so the population survives with positive probability.

¶ **EXAMPLE 1.3** (Gamblers' ruin). Consider the Markov chain with diagram in [Figure 1.2](#), where  $0 < p = 1 - q < 1$ . The transition probabilities are

$$p_{i,i-1} = q, p_{i,i+1} = p \quad \text{for } i = 1, 2, \dots$$

Imagine that you enter a casino with a fortune of £1 and gamble, £1 at a time, with probability  $p$  of doubling your stake and probability  $q$  of losing it. The resources of the casino are regarded as infinite, so there is no upper limit to your fortune. But what is the probability that you leave broke?

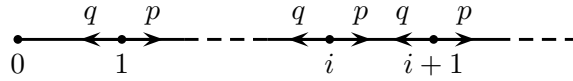


Figure 1.2: gamblers' ruin

Set  $h_i = \mathbb{P}_i(\text{hit } 0)$ , then  $h$  is the minimal non-negative solution to

$$h_0 = 1$$

$$h_i = ph_{i+1} + qh_{i-1}, \text{ for } i = 1, 2, \dots$$

Now we can see this model is particular case of birth-death chain (We don't care the transition probability in state 0). So by [Example 1.2](#),

$$R = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{q}{p}\right)^i.$$

- (i) If  $p > q$ , the solution is  $h_i = \left(\frac{q}{p}\right)^i$  for all  $i \geq 0$ .

- (ii) If  $p < q$ , which is the case in most successful casinos, we have  $h_i = 1$  for all  $i$ . Even if  $p = q$ , i.e., you find a *fair* casino, you are certain to end up broke (But the mean breaking time is infinity, which we will see later). This apparent paradox is called *gamblers' ruin*.

¶ **EXAMPLE 1.4** (带时滞的生灭链). 考虑  $\mathbb{N}$  上的马氏链, 给定  $c \geq 0, \alpha \geq 0$ . 令  $p_{01} = 1$ , 对任意  $i \geq 1$ ,

$$p_{i,i+1} = \frac{1}{2}, \quad p_{i,i-1} = \frac{\exp(-ci^{-\alpha})}{2}, \quad p_{ii} = \frac{1 - \exp(-ci^{-\alpha})}{2}$$

我们来计算这个带有“时滞”的生灭链的灭绝概率. 令  $h_i := \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_0 < \infty)$ , 则

$$h_i = p_{i,i+1}h_{i+1} + p_{i,i-1}h_{i-1} + p_{ii}h_i$$

等式两边同时减去  $h_i$ , 得到

$$h_i - h_{i+1} = \frac{p_{i,i-1}}{p_{i,i+1}} (h_{i-1} - h_i)$$

将  $p_{i,i+1}$  看为  $b_i$ , 将  $p_{i,i-1}$  视为  $d_i$ , 则从生灭链的灭绝概率计算中我们知道,  $h_i$  全为 1 当且仅当  $R = \infty$ , 其中

$$R = 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \exp \left( -c \sum_{j=1}^k j^{-\alpha} \right).$$

### 1.2.2 Mean hitting times

**Theorem 1.9.** *The vector of mean hitting times  $(t_i)_{i \in I}$  is the minimal non-negative solution to the system of linear equations*

$$\begin{cases} t_i = 0, & \text{for } i \in A. \\ t_i = 1 + \sum_{j \notin A} p_{ij} t_j, & \text{for } i \notin A. \end{cases} \quad (1.3)$$

*Proof.* First we show that  $(t_i)_{i \in I}$  satisfies (1.3). If  $X_0 = i \in A$ , then  $\tau_A = 0$ , so  $t_i = 0$ .

If  $X_0 = i \notin A$ , then  $\tau_A \geq 1$ , so, by the Markov property,

$$\mathbb{E}_i(\tau_A \mid X_1 = j) = 1 + \mathbb{E}_i(\tau_A - 1 \mid X_1 = j) = 1 + \mathbb{E}_j(\tau_A),$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} t_i &= \mathbb{E}_i(\tau_A) = \sum_{j \in I} \mathbb{E}_i(\tau_A \mid X_1 = j) \\ &= \mathbb{P}_i(X_1 = j) = 1 + \sum_{j \notin A} p_{ij} t_j. \end{aligned}$$

Suppose now that  $y = (y_i)_{i \in I}$  is any solution to (1.3). Then  $t_i = y_i = 0$  for  $i \in A$ . For  $i \notin A$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} y_i &= 1 + \sum_{j \notin A} p_{ij} y_j \\ &= 1 + \sum_{j \notin A} p_{ij} \left( 1 + \sum_{k \notin A} p_{jk} y_k \right) \\ &= \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A \geq 1) + \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A \geq 2) + \sum_{j \notin A} \sum_{k \notin A} p_{ij} p_{jk} y_k \end{aligned}$$

By repeated substitution for  $y$  in the final term we obtain after  $n$  steps

$$y_i = \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A \geq 1) + \cdots + \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A \geq n) + \sum_{j_1 \notin A} \cdots \sum_{j_n \notin A} p_{ij_1} p_{j_1 j_2} \cdots p_{j_{n-1} j_n} y_{j_n}$$

So, if  $y$  is non-negative,

$$y_i \geq \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A \geq 1) + \cdots + \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A \geq n)$$

and, letting  $n \rightarrow \infty$

$$y_i \geq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A \geq n) = \mathbb{E}_i(\tau_A) = t_i \quad \square$$

**Remark.** In fact, using first step analysis, we find that

$$1 + \sum_{k \in I} p_{ik} \mathbb{E}_k(\tau_A) = \mathbb{E}_i(\sigma_A), \quad \text{for all } i \in I,$$

where  $\sigma_A := \inf\{n \geq 1 : X_n \in A\}$ .

## EXERCISE

¶ *EXERCISE 1.5.* Let  $A, B \subset I$  and  $A \cap B = \emptyset$ . Let  $x_i$  be the probability starting from  $i$  that  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  hits  $A$  before hitting  $B$ . In other words,

$$x_i := \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A < \tau_B), \text{ for any } i \in I.$$

(i) Show that

$$\sum_{j \in I} p_{ij} \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A < \tau_B) = \mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_A < \sigma_B).$$

(ii) Show that  $(x_i)_{i \in I}$  is the minimal non-negative solution to the system of linear equations

$$\begin{cases} x_i = 1, & \text{for } i \in A. \\ x_i = 0, & \text{for } i \in B. \\ x_i = \sum_{j \in I} p_{ij} x_j, & \text{for } i \notin A, B. \end{cases}$$

¶ *EXERCISE 1.6.* Let  $G_{ij} = \mathbb{E}_i(V_j)$ . (The definition of  $V_j$  is given by (1.4.2))

(i) Using first step analysis, show that for any  $j$  is fixed,  $(G_{ij})_{i \in I}$  is the minimal non-negative solution to the system of linear equations

$$G_{ij} = \sum_{k \in I} p_{ik} G_{kj} + \delta_{ij}.$$

(ii)\* Using *cycle trick*, show that for  $i$  is fixed,  $(G_{ij})_{j \in I}$  is the solution to the system of linear equations

$$G_{ij} = \sum_{k \in I} G_{ik} p_{kj} + \delta_{ij}.$$

In fact, that is  $G = PG + I = GP + I$ , or  $G = (I - P)^{-1}$ . We can see this from  $G = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} P^n$ .



¶ EXERCISE 1.7.  $A \subset I$ . Let

$$G_{ij}^A := \mathbb{E}_i \left( \sum_{0 \leq n < \tau_A} 1_{\{X_n=j\}} \right)$$

(称为区域格林函数, 见 Oct 8 课堂笔记). Show that

$$\begin{cases} G_{ij}^A = 1, & \text{for } i \in A \text{ or } j \in A. \\ G_{ij}^A = \sum_{k \notin A} p_{ik} G_{kj}^A + \delta_{ij} \\ \quad = \sum_{k \notin A} G_{ik}^A p_{kj} + \delta_{ij}, & \text{for } i, j \notin A. \end{cases} \quad (1.4)$$

In fact that is  $G^A|_{A^c} = G^A|_{A^c} P|_{A^c} + I|_{A^c} = P|_{A^c} G^A|_{A^c} + I|_{A^c}$ . Then  $G^A|_{A^c} = (I|_{A^c} - P|_{A^c})^{-1}$ . We can see this from  $G^A|_{A^c} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (P|_{A^c})^n$ .

### 1.3 Strong Markov property

In [Section 1.1](#) we proved the Markov property: for any time  $m$ , conditional on  $X_m = i$ , the process after time  $m$  begins *afresh* from  $i$ . Suppose, instead of conditioning on  $X_m = i$ , we simply waited for the process to hit state  $i$ , at the random time  $\tau_i$ . What can one say about the process after time  $\tau_i$ ? What if we replaced  $\tau_i$  by a more general random time, for example  $\tau_i - 1$ ? In this section we shall identify a class of random times at which a version of the Markov property does hold. This class will include  $\tau_i$  but not  $\tau_i - 1$ , after all, the process after time  $\tau_i - 1$  jumps straight to  $i$ , so it does not simply begin afresh.

**Definition 1.3.** A random variable  $\tau : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\}$  is called a **stopping time** if the event  $\{\tau \leq n\} \in \sigma(X_0, \dots, X_n)$  for any  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ .

Obviously,  $\{\tau \leq n\} \in \sigma(X_0, \dots, X_n)$  can be replaced by  $\{\tau = n\} \in \sigma(X_0, \dots, X_n)$  for any  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ . Intuitively,  $\tau$  is a stopping time if by watching the process, you know at the time when  $\tau$  occurs. If asked to stop at  $\tau$ , you know when to stop.

¶ *EXAMPLE 1.8.*

- (i) The first hitting time  $\tau_A$  is a stopping time because

$$\{\tau_A = n\} = \{X_0 \notin A, \dots, X_{n-1} \notin A, X_n \in A\}$$

- (ii) The first passage time  $\sigma_A$  is a stopping time because

$$\{\sigma_A = n\} = \{X_1 \notin A, \dots, X_{n-1} \notin A, X_n = j\}$$

- (iii) The *last exit time* of  $A \subset I$

$$L_A = \sup \{n \geq 0 : X_n \in A\}$$

is not in general a stopping time, because the event  $\{L^A = n\}$  depends on whether  $(X_{n+m})_{m \geq 1}$  visits  $A$  or not.

We shall show that the Markov property holds at stopping times  $\tau$ . That is, if  $\tau < \infty$  and we know the state of the chain when it stops, i.e.,  $X_\tau = i$ , then the history  $(X_0, \dots, X_\tau)$  and the future  $(X_{\tau+n})_{n \geq 0}$  are independent, and the future  $(X_{\tau+n})_{n \geq 0}$  is Markov chain starting at  $i$  with the previous transition matrix.

On the event  $\{\tau < \infty\}$ , we define  $(X_0, \dots, X_\tau) = (X_0, \dots, X_n)$  when  $\{\tau = n\}$ , for all  $n \geq 0$ . Since  $\{\tau = n\} \in \sigma(X_0, \dots, X_n)$ , it is well-defined. We regard  $(X_0, \dots, X_\tau)$  as an random orbit in  $\cup_{n \geq 0} I^{n+1}$  equipped with a  $\sigma$ -algebra consisting of all the subset of  $\cup_{n \geq 0} I^{n+1}$ . The first problem is, What are the events determined by  $(X_0, \dots, X_\tau)$ , i.e., what is  $\sigma(X_0, \dots, X_\tau)$ ?

For any  $A \subset \cup_{n \geq 0} I^{n+1}$ , let  $A_n = A \cap I^{n+1}$ , then  $A = \cup_{n \geq 0} A_n$ . Then

$$\{(X_0, \dots, X_\tau) \in A\} = \bigcup_{n \geq 0} \{(X_0, \dots, X_n) \in A_n\} \cap \{\tau = n\}.$$

Let  $\mathcal{F}_n = \sigma(X_0, \dots, X_n)$  for all  $n \geq 0$ . Thus we have

$$\sigma(X_0, \dots, X_\tau) = \{B \in \mathcal{F} : B \cap \{\tau = n\} \in \mathcal{F}_n \text{ for all } n \geq 0\}. \quad (1.5)$$

**Theorem 1.10 (Strong Markov property).** *Let  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be Markov( $\lambda, P$ ) and let  $\tau$  be a stopping time of  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$ . Then, conditional on  $\tau < \infty$  and  $X_\tau = i$ ,  $(X_{\tau+n})_{n \geq 0}$  is Markov( $\delta_i, P$ ) and independent of  $(X_0, X_1, \dots, X_\tau)$*

*Proof.* We only need to prove that for any  $B \in \sigma(X_0, X_1, \dots, X_\tau)$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(\{X_\tau = j_0, X_{\tau+1} = j_1, \dots, X_{\tau+n} = j_n\} \cap B \mid \tau < \infty, X_\tau = i) \\ &= \mathbb{P}_i(X_0 = j_0, X_1 = j_1, \dots, X_n = j_n) \mathbb{P}(B \mid \tau < \infty, X_\tau = i) \end{aligned}$$

Which is equivalent to

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(\{X_\tau = j_0, X_{\tau+1} = j_1, \dots, X_{\tau+n} = j_n\} \cap B \cap \{\tau < \infty\} \cap \{X_\tau = i\}) \\ &= \mathbb{P}_i(X_0 = j_0, X_1 = j_1, \dots, X_n = j_n) \mathbb{P}(B \cap \{\tau < \infty\} \cap \{X_\tau = i\}) \end{aligned}$$

It's sufficient to prove that for any  $m \geq 0$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(\{X_\tau = j_0, X_{\tau+1} = j_1, \dots, X_{\tau+n} = j_n\} \cap B \cap \{\tau = m\} \cap \{X_\tau = i\}) \\ &= \mathbb{P}_i(X_0 = j_0, X_1 = j_1, \dots, X_n = j_n) \mathbb{P}(B \cap \{\tau = m\} \cap \{X_\tau = i\}), \end{aligned}$$

i.e.,

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(\{X_m = j_0, X_{m+1} = j_1, \dots, X_{m+n} = j_n\} \cap B \cap \{\tau = m\} \cap \{X_m = i\}) \\ &= \mathbb{P}_i(X_0 = j_0, X_1 = j_1, \dots, X_n = j_n) \mathbb{P}(B \cap \{\tau = m\} \cap \{X_m = i\}) , \end{aligned}$$

Note that  $B \cap \{\tau = m\} \in \sigma(X_0, \dots, X_m)$  so, by the Markov property at time  $m$  we know the identity holds. So we complete the proof.  $\square$

¶ *EXAMPLE 1.9 (去掉时滞)*. We now consider an application of the strong Markov property to a Markov chain  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  observed only at certain times. In the first instance suppose that *we observe the original chain only when it moves*. Let  $S_0 = 0$  and for  $m = 0, 1, 2, \dots$

$$S_{m+1} = \inf \{n \geq S_m + 1 : X_n \neq X_{S_m}\}$$

Assume there are no absorbing states. It's easy to find that the random times  $S_m$  for  $m \geq 0$  are stopping times. The resulting process  $(Z_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is given by  $Z_n = X_{S_n}$  and, by the strong Markov property

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(Z_{m+1} = i_{m+1} \mid Z_0 = i_1, \dots, Z_m = i_m) \\ &= \mathbb{P}(X_{S_{m+1}} = i_{m+1} \mid X_{S_0} = i_1, \dots, X_{S_m} = i_m) \\ &= \mathbb{P}_{i_m}(X_{S_1} = i_{m+1}) = \tilde{p}_{i_m i_{m+1}} \end{aligned}$$

where  $\tilde{p}_{ii} = 0$  and, for  $i \neq j$ ,  $\tilde{p}_{ij} = p_{ij}/(1 - p_{ii})$ . Thus  $(Z_m)_{m \geq 0}$  is a Markov chain with transition matrix  $\tilde{P}$ .

¶ *EXAMPLE 1.10 (限制观测窗口)*. A second example of a similar type arises if  $J \subset I$  is some subset of the state-space and we observe the chain only when it takes values in  $J$ . The resulting process  $(Y_m)_{m \geq 0}$  may be obtained formally by setting  $Y_m = X_{T_m}$ , where

$$T_0 = \inf \{n \geq 0 : X_n \in J\}$$

and, for  $m = 0, 1, 2, \dots$

$$T_{m+1} = \inf \{n > T_m : X_n \in J\}$$

Let us assume that  $\mathbb{P}(T_m < \infty) = 1$  for all  $m$ . For each  $m$  we can check easily that  $T_m$ , the time of the  $m$  th visit to  $J$ , is a stopping time. So the strong Markov property applies to show, for  $i_1, \dots, i_{m+1} \in J$ , that

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(Y_{m+1} = i_{m+1} \mid Y_0 = i_1, \dots, Y_m = i_m) \\ &= \mathbb{P}(X_{T_{m+1}} = i_{m+1} \mid X_{T_0} = i_1, \dots, X_{T_m} = i_m) \\ &= \mathbb{P}_{i_m}(X_{T_1} = i_{m+1}) = \bar{p}_{i_m i_{m+1}} \end{aligned}$$

where  $p_{ij} = \mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_J = j)$  for all  $i, j \in J$ .

¶ *EXAMPLE 1.11.* Let  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be gamblers' ruin. We know from [Example](#)

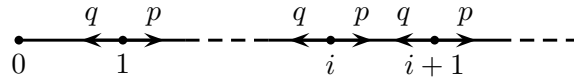


Figure 1.3: gamblers' ruin

[1.3](#) the probability of hitting 0 starting from 1. Here we obtain the complete distribution of the time to hit 0 starting from 1 in terms of its *probability generating function*. Set

$$\tau_j = \inf \{n \geq 0 : X_n = j\}$$

and, for  $0 \leq s < 1$ ,

$$\phi(s) = \mathbb{E}_1(s^{\tau_0}) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_1(\tau_0 = n) s^n.$$

Using first step analysis,

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(s) &= \mathbb{E}_1(s^{\tau_0}) = p \mathbb{E}_1(s^{\tau_0} \mid X_1 = 2) + q \mathbb{E}_1(s^{\tau_0} \mid X_1 = 0) \\ &= ps \mathbb{E}_1(s^{\tau_0-1} \mid X_1 = 2) + q \mathbb{E}_1(s \mid X_1 = 0) \\ &= ps \mathbb{E}_2(s^{\tau_0}) + qs \end{aligned}$$

Now we try to compute  $\mathbb{E}_2(s^{\tau_0})$ . Under  $\mathbb{P}_2$ , we have  $\tau_0 < \tau_1$ . Apply the strong Markov property at  $\tau_1$  to see that conditional on  $\tau_1 < \infty$  (and of course  $X_{\tau_1} = 1$ ), we have  $\tau_0 - \tau_1$  is independent of  $\tau_1$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbb{E}_2(s^{\tau_0}) &= \mathbb{E}_2(s^{\tau_1} s^{\tau_0 - \tau_1} \mid \tau_1 < \infty) \mathbb{P}_2(\tau_1 < \infty) \\ &= \mathbb{E}_2(s^{\tau_1} 1_{\{\tau_1 < \infty\}}) \mathbb{E}_2(s^{\tau_0 - \tau_1} \mid \tau_1 < \infty) \\ &= \mathbb{E}_2(s^{\tau_1}) \mathbb{E}_2(s^{\tau_0 - \tau_1} \mid \tau_1 < \infty)\end{aligned}$$

The space is translation invariant, so the distribution of  $\tau_1$  under  $P_2$  coincides with the distribution of  $\tau_0$  under  $P_1$ , so  $\mathbb{E}_2(s^{\tau_1}) = \phi(s)$ . On the other hand, by strong Markov property, conditional on  $\tau_1 < \infty$ ,  $\tau_0 - \tau_1$  has the same distribution of  $\tau_0$  under  $P_1$ , thus  $\mathbb{E}_2(s^{\tau_0 - \tau_1} \mid \tau_1 < \infty) = \phi(s)$ . Then  $\mathbb{E}_2(s^{\tau_0}) = \phi(s)^2$ .

Thus  $\phi = \phi(s)$  satisfies

$$ps\phi^2 - \phi + qs = 0 \tag{1.6}$$

and this equation has two solutions:  $(1 \pm \sqrt{1 - 4pqs^2})/2ps$ . Since  $\phi(0) \leq 1$ , and  $\phi$  is continuous we are forced to take the negative root at  $s = 0$  and stick with it for all  $0 \leq s < 1$ . Thus

$$\phi(s) = \frac{1 - \sqrt{1 - 4pqs^2}}{2ps}. \tag{1.7}$$

- (i) To recover the distribution of  $\tau_0$  we expand the square-root as a power series:

$$\begin{aligned}\phi(s) &= \frac{1}{2ps} \left\{ 1 - \left( 1 + \frac{1}{2}(-4pqs^2) + \frac{1}{2} \left( -\frac{1}{2} \right) (-4pqs^2)^2 / 2! + \dots \right) \right\} \\ &= qs + pq^2s^3 + \dots \\ &= s\mathbb{P}_1(\tau_0 = 1) + s^2\mathbb{P}_1(\tau_0 = 2) + s^3\mathbb{P}_1(\tau_0 = 3) + \dots\end{aligned}$$

The first few probabilities  $\mathbb{P}_1(\tau_0 = 1), \mathbb{P}_1(\tau_0 = 2), \dots$  are readily checked from first principles.

(ii) On letting  $s \uparrow 1$ , we have  $\phi(s) \rightarrow \mathbb{P}_1(\tau_0 < \infty)$ , so

$$\mathbb{P}_1(\tau_0 < \infty) = \frac{1 - \sqrt{1 - 4pq}}{2p} = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } p \leq q. \\ q/p, & \text{if } p > q. \end{cases}$$

(iii) We can also find the mean hitting time using

$$\mathbb{E}_1(\tau_0) = \lim_{s \uparrow 1} \phi'(s).$$

It is only worth considering the case  $p \leq q$ , where the mean hitting time has a chance of being finite. Differentiate (1.6) to obtain

$$2ps\phi\phi' + p\phi^2 - \phi' + q = 0,$$

so

$$\phi'(s) = (p\phi(s)^2 + q) / (1 - 2ps\phi(s)) \rightarrow 1/(1 - 2p) = 1/(q - p) \quad \text{as } s \uparrow 1.$$

## EXERCISE

¶ EXERCISE 1.12.  $\tau, \sigma$  both are stopping times. Then

(i)  $\tau \wedge \sigma, \tau \vee \sigma, \tau + \sigma$  are stopping times.

(ii) Assume  $\sigma \geq \tau$ , give an example such that  $\sigma - \tau$  is not stopping time.

¶ EXERCISE 1.13. Let  $\xi_1, \xi_2, \dots$  be independent identically distributed random variables with  $\mathbb{P}(\xi_1 = 2) = \mathbb{P}(\xi_1 = -1) = 1/2$ , and set  $X_0 = 1, X_n = X_0 + \xi_1 + \dots + \xi_n$  for  $n \geq 1$ . Show that the probability generating function  $\phi(s) = \mathbb{E}(s^{\tau_0})$  now satisfies

$$s\phi^3 - 2\phi + s = 0$$

## 1.4 Recurrence and transience

Let  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be a Markov chain with transition matrix  $P$ . We say that a state  $i$  is **recurrent** if

$$\mathbb{P}_i(X_n = i \text{ i.o.}) = 1,$$

is **transient** if

$$\mathbb{P}_i(X_n = i \text{ i.o.}) = 0.$$

Thus a recurrent state is one to which you keep coming back and a transient state is one which you eventually leave for ever. We shall show that every state is either recurrent or transient.

### 1.4.1 Decomposing orbit by excursions

Recall that **the first passage time** to state  $i$  is the random variable  $T_i$  defined by

$$T_i = \inf \{n \geq 1 : X_n = i\},$$

where  $\inf \emptyset = \infty$ . We now define inductively the  $r$ th passage time  $T_i^{(r)}$  to state  $i$  by

$$T_i^{(0)} = 0, \quad T_i^{(1)} = T_i$$

and, for  $r = 0, 1, 2, \dots$

$$T_i^{(r+1)} = \inf \left\{ n \geq T_i^{(r)} + 1 : X_n = i \right\}.$$

The **length of the  $r$ th excursion** to  $i$  is then

$$\sigma_i^{(r)} = \begin{cases} T_i^{(r)} - T_i^{(r-1)}, & \text{if } T_i^{(r-1)} < \infty. \\ \infty, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Our analysis of recurrence and transience will rest on finding the joint distribution of these excursion lengths.



**Lemma 1.11.** For  $r = 2, 3, \dots$ , conditional on  $T_i^{(r-1)} < \infty$ ,  $\sigma_i^{(r)}$  is independent of  $(X_0, \dots, X_{T_i^{(r-1)}})$  and

$$\mathbb{P}(\sigma_i^{(r)} = n \mid T_i^{(r-1)} < \infty) = \mathbb{P}_i(T_i = n)$$

*Proof.* Apply the strong Markov property at the stopping time  $T = T_i^{(r-1)}$ . It is automatic that  $X_T = i$  on  $T < \infty$ . So, conditional on  $T < \infty$ ,  $(X_{T+n})_{n \geq 0}$  is Markov  $(\delta_i, P)$  and independent of  $X_0, X_1, \dots, X_T$ . But

$$\sigma_i^{(r)} = \inf\{n \geq 1 : X_{T+n} = i\}$$

so  $\sigma_i^{(r)}$  is the first passage time of  $(X_{T+n})_{n \geq 0}$  to state  $i$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 1.12.** For any positive integer  $r$  and  $n_1, \dots, n_r \in \mathbb{N}_+$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_i^{(1)} = n_1, \sigma_i^{(2)} = n_2, \dots, \sigma_i^{(r)} = n_r) = \prod_{s=1}^r \mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_i = n_s).$$

Moreover,  $\{\sigma_i^{(r)}\}_{r=1}^\infty$  are i.i.d. r.v.'s under  $\mathbb{P}_i$  if  $\mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_i < \infty) = 1$ .

Also, we can compute the distribution of  $T_i^{(r)}$  in terms of the **return probability**

$$\rho_{ij} = \mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_j < \infty).$$

Then

**Corollary 1.13.** For any  $r \in \mathbb{N}^+$ , We have

$$\mathbb{P}(T_i^{(r)} < \infty) = \rho_{ii}^{r-1} \mathbb{P}(\sigma_i < \infty).$$

*Proof.* When  $r = 1$  the result is true. Suppose inductively that it is true for  $r$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}(T_i^{(r+1)} < \infty) &= \mathbb{P}(T_i^{(r)} < \infty \text{ and } \sigma_i^{(r+1)} < \infty) \\ &= \mathbb{P}(\sigma_i^{(r+1)} < \infty \mid T_i^{(r)} < \infty) \mathbb{P}(T_i^{(r)} < \infty) \\ &= \mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_i < \infty) \mathbb{P}(T_i^{(r)} < \infty) \\ &= \rho_{ii}(\rho_{ii})^{r-1} \mathbb{P}(\sigma_i < \infty) = (\rho_{ii})^r \mathbb{P}(\sigma_i < \infty). \end{aligned}$$

So by induction the result is true for all  $r \in \mathbb{N}_+$ .  $\square$

### 1.4.2 Visits number and recurrence

Let us introduce **the number of visits  $V_i$  to  $i$** , which may be written in terms of indicator functions as

$$V_i = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 1_{\{X_n=i\}}.$$

It's easy to observe that if the Markov chain starts at state  $i$ , i.e.,  $X_0 = i$ , then

$$\{V_i > r\} = \{T_i^{(r)} < \infty\}.$$

Then  $\mathbb{P}_i(V_i > n) = (\rho_{ii})^n$  for any  $n$ . Thus we have shown

**Theorem 1.14.** *Under  $\mathbb{P}_i$ , the number of visits  $V_i$  is geometric( $1 - \rho_{ii}$ ).*

As a consequence,

$$\mathbb{P}_i(V_i = \infty) = \begin{cases} 1, & \rho_{ii} = 1. \\ 0, & \rho_{ii} < 1. \end{cases}$$

In particular, every state is either transient or recurrent. Besides,

$$\mathbb{E}_i(V_i) = \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_i(V_i > r) = \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} (\rho_{ii})^r = \begin{cases} \infty, & \rho_{ii} = 1. \\ \frac{1}{1-\rho_{ii}}, & \rho_{ii} < 1. \end{cases}$$

On the other hand,  $V_i$  is the sum of indicator functions, so

$$\mathbb{E}_i(V_i) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_i(X_n = i) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_{ii}^{(n)}.$$

Finally, we have got the necessary and sufficient condition of recurrence.

**Theorem 1.15.** *The following dichotomy holds:*

- (i)  $i$  is recurrent  $\Leftrightarrow \rho_{ii} = 1 \Leftrightarrow \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_{ii}^{(n)} = \infty$ .
- (ii)  $i$  is transient  $\Leftrightarrow \rho_{ii} < 1 \Leftrightarrow \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_{ii}^{(n)} < \infty$ .

Another proof using *first passage decomposition* is given in [Exercise 1.21](#).

First we show that recurrence and transience are *class properties*.

**Theorem 1.16.** Suppose state  $i$  is recurrent, and  $i \rightarrow j$ , then

(i)  $j \rightarrow i$ , and  $\mathbb{P}_j(\tau_i < \infty) = 1$ .

(ii)  $j$  is recurrent.

*Proof.* First we show that  $\mathbb{P}_j(\tau_i < \infty) = 1$ . Since  $\mathbb{P}_i(V_i = \infty) = 1$ , there must be  $\mathbb{P}_i(V_i = \infty, \tau_j < \infty) = \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_j < \infty)$ . On the other hand,

$$\{V_i = \infty, \tau_j < \infty\} = \left\{ \sum_{n \geq \tau_j} 1_{\{X_n = i\}} = \infty, \tau_j < \infty \right\}$$

Thus, by strong Markov property,

$$\mathbb{P}_i(V_i = \infty, \tau_j < \infty) = \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_j < \infty) \mathbb{P}_j(V_i = \infty)$$

Thus

$$\mathbb{P}_j(V_i = \infty) = 1.$$

But  $\mathbb{P}_j(V_i = \infty) \leq \mathbb{P}_j(\tau_i < \infty) \leq 1$ , so we get  $\mathbb{P}_j(\tau_i < \infty) = 1$ .

Since  $j \leftrightarrow i$ , there exists  $l, m \geq 0$  with  $p_{ij}^{(l)} > 0$  and  $p_{ji}^{(m)} > 0$ , and, for all  $r \geq 0$

$$p_{jj}^{(l+r+m)} \geq p_{ij}^{(l)} p_{ii}^{(r)} p_{ji}^{(m)}$$

So

$$\infty = \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} p_{ii}^{(r)} \leq \frac{1}{p_{ij}^{(l)} p_{ji}^{(m)}} \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} p_{jj}^{(l+r+m)}$$

Hence  $j$  is also recurrent by [Theorem 1.15](#). Another proof of (ii), using the partition of orbits by excursion, can be found in [Exercise 1.22](#).  $\square$

**Corollary 1.17.** Recurrence and transience are class properties, and every recurrent class is closed.

### 1.4.3 Absorption probability test

The following theorem relates the recurrence with absorption probability. Intuitively, a state  $i$  is recurrent, then the chain must return to  $i$  with probability 1 from any state  $i$  leading to. And the converse is true.

**Theorem 1.18.** *State  $i$  is recurrent if and only if for any state  $j$  such that  $i$  leads to  $j$ , there must be  $\mathbb{P}_j(\tau_i < \infty) = 1$ .*

*Proof. Sufficiency :* If  $i \rightarrow j$  implies  $\mathbb{P}_j(\tau_i < \infty) = 1$ , since

$$\mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_i < \infty) = \sum_{j \in I} p_{ij} \mathbb{P}_j(\tau_i < \infty) ,$$

and for any  $j$  such that  $p_{ij} > 0$ ,  $\mathbb{P}_j(\tau_i < \infty) = 1$ . Thus  $\mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_i < \infty) = 1$ .

*Necessity :* See [Theorem 1.16](#). □

We will need the following corollary in [Section 1.8](#), which asserts that irreducible and recurrent chain will visit any state with probability one, no matter what the initial distribution is.

**Corollary 1.19.** *Suppose  $P$  is irreducible and recurrent. Then for all state  $j$  we have  $\mathbb{P}(\sigma_j < \infty) = 1$ ,*

*Proof.* By total probability formula we have

$$\mathbb{P}(\sigma_j < \infty) = \sum_{i \in I} \mathbb{P}(X_0 = i) \mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_j < \infty)$$

Note that  $i$  is recurrent,  $\mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_i < \infty) = 1$ . and by [Theorem 1.18](#) we know that  $\mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_j < \infty) = \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_j < \infty) = 1$ , for all  $j \neq i$ . So  $\mathbb{P}(\sigma_j < \infty) = 1$ . □

Absorption probability test : If  $P$  is irreducible, then  $P$  is recurrent if and only if for any state  $i$ , (1.8) has a unique solution:  $x_j = 1, \forall j \in I$ .

$$\begin{cases} x_i = 1 . \\ x_j = \sum_{k \in I} p_{jk} x_k, \forall j \neq i . \\ x_j \geq 0, \forall j \in I . \end{cases} \quad (1.8)$$

¶ **EXAMPLE 1.14** (Recurrence of the birth-death chain). Let  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be a irreducible birth-death chain with birth probability  $b_i$  and death probability  $d_i$ . Let  $R_i = 1 + \sum_{k=1}^i \frac{d_1 \cdots d_k}{b_1 \cdots b_k}$ ,  $R = 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{d_1 \cdots d_k}{b_1 \cdots b_k}$ . By [Example 1.2](#),

- (i) if  $R < \infty$ ,  $x_i := 1 - \frac{R_i - 1}{R}$  is a solution not equals 1, so the Markov chain is transient ;
- (ii) if  $R = \infty$ , then  $x_i = 1, \forall i \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , the chain is recurrent.

Therefore, the Markov chain is recurrent if and only if  $R = \infty$ .

¶ **EXAMPLE 1.15** ( $\lambda$ -biased random walk on homogeneous tree  $\mathbb{T}^d$ ). Let  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be the  $\lambda$ -biased random walk on homogeneous tree  $\mathbb{T}^d$ . Let

$$Y_n = |X_n| \text{ for each } n \in \mathbb{N},$$

then  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is a birth-death chain with birth probability  $b_i = \frac{d}{\lambda + d}$ .  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  hits it's root if and only if  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  hits 0, thus the recurrence of  $\{X_n\}$  coincides with  $\{Y_n\}$ . By [Example 1.14](#),  $R = 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (\frac{\lambda}{d})^k$ , hence  $\{X_n\}$  is recurrent if and only if  $\lambda \geq d$ .

¶ **EXAMPLE 1.16**. 我们来考虑 [Example 1.4](#) 中马氏链的常返性. 这个马氏链是不可约的, 其常返性质等价于吸收概率方程组的解是否恒为 1. 由 [Example 1.4](#) 中的讨论, 我们知道该马氏链常返当且仅当  $R = \infty$ , 其中

$$R = 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \exp \left( -c \sum_{j=1}^k j^{-\alpha} \right)$$

- (i) 若  $c = 0$ , 则  $R = \infty$ , 马氏链常返, 它就是带反射壁简单随机游动.
- (ii) 若  $c > 0$ . 当  $\alpha > 1$  时,

$$\sum_{j=1}^k j^{-\alpha} < \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} j^{-\alpha} < \infty, \exp \left( -c \sum_{j=1}^k j^{-\alpha} \right) \geq \varepsilon > 0$$

于是  $R = \infty$ , 马氏链常返.

(iii) 若  $c > 0$ . 当  $a < 1$  时

$$\sum_{j=1}^k j^{-\alpha} \approx \frac{k^{1-\alpha}}{1-\alpha}, \exp \left( -c \sum_{j=1}^k j^{-\alpha} \right) \approx \exp \left( -\frac{c}{1-\alpha} k^{1-\alpha} \right).$$

于是  $R < \infty$ , 马氏链常返.

(iv) 若  $c > 0$ . 当  $a = 1$  时

$$\sum_{j=1}^k j^{-1} \approx \log k, \exp \left( -c \sum_{j=1}^k j^{-1} \right) \approx k^{-c}$$

于是当且仅当  $c \leq 1$  时  $R = \infty$ .

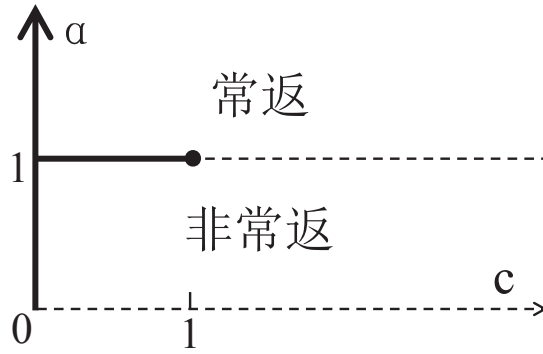


Figure 1.4: 参数取值与常返

于是, 常返性依赖于参数的关系如 Figure 1.4 所示, 其中实线表示常返, 虚线表示非常返.

¶ EXAMPLE 1.17 (Simple random walk on  $\mathbb{Z}^d$ ). The fact is when  $d = 1, 2$ , the walk is recurrent, but when  $d \geq 3$ , the walk is transient.

Suppose we start at 0. It is clear that we cannot return to 0 after an odd number of steps, so  $p_{00}^{(2n+1)} = 0$  for all  $n$ . Assume we return to 0 after  $2n$  steps. Of these  $2n$  steps there must be  $l_r$  up,  $l_r$  down in the  $r$ th direction, with  $l_1 + \cdots + l_d = n$ . By counting the ways in which this can be done, we

obtain

$$p_{00}^{(2n)} = P_0(S_{2n} = 0) = \sum_{l_1 + \dots + l_d = n} \frac{(2n)!}{(l_1!)^2 \dots (l_d!)^2} \cdot \frac{1}{(2d)^{2n}},$$

where  $l_r$  take values in  $\mathbb{N}$  for all  $r = 1, \dots, d$ . We will prove

$$P_0(S_{2n} = 0) \sim Cn^{-\frac{d}{2}}.$$

(i) when  $d = 1$ , using Stirling formular  $n! \sim (n/e)^n \sqrt{2\pi n}$  we know

$$p_{00}^{(2n)} = \frac{(2n)!}{(n!)^2} \cdot \frac{1}{2^{2n}} \sim \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi n}}$$

$$\text{So } \mathbb{E}_0 V_0 = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_{00}^{(n)} = \infty.$$

(ii) When  $d = 2$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} P_0(S_{2n} = 0) &= \sum_{l_1 + l_2 = n} \frac{(2n)!}{(l_1!)^2 (l_2!)^2} \frac{1}{4^{2n}} = \frac{(2n)!}{n!n!} \frac{1}{4^{2n}} \sum_{l_1 + l_2 = n} \frac{n!}{l_1!l_2!} \frac{n!}{l_2!l_1!} \\ &= \binom{2n}{n} \frac{1}{4^{2n}} \sum_{l=0}^n \binom{n}{l} \binom{n}{n-l} = \frac{1}{4^{2n}} \binom{2n}{n}^2 \sim \frac{1}{\pi n} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Also, we have } \mathbb{E}_0 V_0 = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_{00}^{(n)} = \infty.$$

(iii) When  $d = 3$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} P_0(S_{2n} = 0) &= \sum_{l_1 + l_2 + l_3 = n} \frac{(2n)!}{(l_1!)^2 (l_2!)^2 (l_3!)^2} \frac{1}{6^{2n}} \\ &= \frac{1}{2^{2n}} \frac{(2n)!}{n!n!} \sum_{l_1 + l_2 + l_3 = n} \left( \frac{n!}{l_1!l_2!l_3!} \frac{1}{3^n} \right)^2 \end{aligned}$$

Note that

$$\sum_{l_1 + l_2 + l_3 = n} \binom{n}{l_1 l_2 l_3} \left( \frac{1}{3} \right)^n = 1$$

the left-hand side being the total probability of all the ways of placing  $n$  balls randomly into three boxes. For the case where  $n = 3m$ , we have

$$\frac{n!}{l_1!l_2!l_3!} \leq \frac{n!}{(m!)^3} \sim 3^n \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2\pi n}$$

for all  $l_1, l_2, l_3$ . So

$$p_{00}^{(2n)} \leq \binom{2n}{n} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{2n} \binom{n}{m \ m \ m} \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n \sim \left(\frac{3}{\pi n}\right)^{3/2} \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty$$

by Stirling's formula. Hence,  $\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} p_{00}^{(6m)} < \infty$  by comparison with  $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} n^{-3/2}$ . But  $p_{00}^{(6m)} \geq (1/6)^2 p_{00}^{(6m-2)}$  and  $p_{00}^{(6m)} \geq (1/6)^4 p_{00}^{(6m-4)}$  for all  $m$  so we must have

$$\mathbb{E}_0 V_0 = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_{00}^{(n)} < \infty,$$

and the walk is transient.

- (iv) In the last, For the case when  $d \geq 4$  we can use the same method with  $d = 3$ .

## EXERCISE

¶ EXERCISE 1.18. Prove that every finite closed class is recurrent.

¶ EXERCISE 1.19. 称  $G_{ij} := \mathbb{E}_i(V_j) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_{ij}^{(n)}$  为格林函数 (见章复熹老师讲义). 证明

- (i)  $\mathbb{P}_i(T_j^{(r)} < \infty) = \mathbb{P}_i(V_j \geq r) = \rho_{ij}(\rho_{jj})^{r-1}$ , 其中  $j \neq i$  且  $r$  为正整数.
- (ii) 先用 (i) 中的结论, 证明对任何  $i, j$ ,  $G_{ij} = \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_j < \infty)G_{jj}$ . 再直接证明它, 不要用 (ii) 中的结论.
- (iii) 状态  $j$  非常返当且仅当  $\mathbb{E}(V_j) < \infty$  对任何初始分布  $\lambda$  成立, 状态  $j$  常返当且仅当  $\mathbb{E}(V_j) < \infty$  对任何初始分布  $\lambda$ ,  $\mathbb{P}_\lambda(\tau_j < \infty)$  成立.

¶ EXERCISE 1.20.  $\pi$  is an invariant distribution of  $P$ . If state  $j$  is transient, then  $\pi_j = 0$ .

¶ EXERCISE 1.21 (First passage decomposition). Denote by  $\sigma_j$  the first passage time to state  $j$  and set

$$f_{ij}^{(n)} = \mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_j = n)$$



Justify the identity

$$p_{ij}^{(n)} = \sum_{k=1}^n f_{ij}^{(k)} p_{jj}^{(n-k)} \quad \text{for } n \geq 1$$

and deduce that

$$P_{ij}(s) = \delta_{ij} + F_{ij}(s)P_{jj}(s)$$

where

$$P_{ij}(s) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_{ij}^{(n)} s^n, \quad F_{ij}(s) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} f_{ij}^{(n)} s^n$$

Hence show that  $\mathbb{P}_i(T_i < \infty) = 1$  if and only if

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_{ii}^{(n)} = \infty.$$

¶ *EXERCISE 1.22.* We should point that decomposing the orbits into many excursions is a very useful idea. Assume state  $i$  is recurrent and  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  start at  $i$ . Thus  $T_i^{(k)} < \infty$  for any  $k \in \mathbb{N}_+$ . Then we can define  $Z_k = (X_{T_i^{(k-1)}}, \dots, X_{T_i^{(k)}})$ , is the  $k$ -th excursion.  $Z_k$  take values in  $\{(i_0, \dots, i_n) : i_0 = i_n = i; i_k \neq i, 0 < k < n; n \in \mathbb{N}_+\}$ .

(i) Show that conditional on  $X_0 = i$ ,  $\{Z_k\}$  are i.i.d. random vectors taking values in  $\cup_{n \geq 0} I^{n+1}$ .

(ii) Using (i) to show that if  $i$  leads to  $j$ , then

(a)  $\mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_j < \sigma_i) > 0$ .

(b)  $\mathbb{P}_i(V_j = \infty) = 1$ .

(c)  $\mathbb{P}_j(V_j = \infty) = 1$  and  $\mathbb{P}_i(\tau_j < \infty) = 1$ .

(iii) Read the proof of [idea](#) and [Example 1.35](#).

## 1.5 Invariant distributions

### 1.5.1 Definitions and examples

Many of the long-time properties of Markov chains are connected with the notion of an invariant distribution or measure. Remember that a distribution  $\lambda$  is any row vector  $(\lambda_i)_{i \in I}$  with non-negative entries. We say  $\lambda$  is an **invariant distribution** for  $P$  if

$$\lambda P = \lambda. \quad (1.9)$$

When  $\lambda$  is a measure satisfying (1.9), we call it **invariant measure**.

**Proposition 1.20.** *Let  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be Markov  $(\pi, P)$  and suppose that  $\pi$  is invariant for  $P$ . Then  $(X_{m+n})_{n \geq 0}$  is also Markov  $(\pi, P)$ .*

*Proof.* Clearly,  $\mathbb{P}(X_m = i) = (\pi P^m)_i = \pi_i$  for all  $i$ .

On the other hand, conditional on  $X_{m+n} = i$ ,  $X_{m+n+1}$  is independent of  $(X_m, X_{m+1}, \dots, X_{m+n})$  and has distribution  $(p_{ij})_{j \in I}$ .  $\square$

Based on this property, invariant distribution is also called **stationary distribution**. Sometimes it also called **equilibrium**, the reason is given in [Theorem 1.39](#).

为了从直观上理解不变分布, 我们引入“概率流”的观点. 把每个状态理解为一个位置. 假设我们有大量的粒子, 先将每个粒子独立地按照分布  $\lambda$  放在某个随机位置, 根据强大数定律, 位置  $i$  上的粒子量 (相对于所有粒子的比例) 应该为单个粒子位于状态的概率, 即  $\lambda_i$ . 现在, 让所有粒子独立地按照转移矩阵  $P$  跳跃一步, 那么, 仍然根据强大数定律, 从位置  $i$  跳跃至位置  $j$  的粒子量就应该为当个粒子最初位于位置  $i$  一步以后位于位置  $j$  的概率, 即  $\lambda_i p_{ij}$ . 因此, 我们观测到的现象是, 在这一步转移中, 从  $i$  到  $j$  的粒子流量为  $\lambda_i p_{ij}$ , 我们也说从  $i$  到  $j$  的概率流为  $\lambda_i p_{ij}$ .

若  $\pi$  为不变分布, 则它任意位置  $i$  上的粒子量保持不变, 因此, 在  $\pi$  诱导的概率流中, 对任意位置, 从其他位置流入位置  $i$  的总流量  $\sum_{j \neq i} \pi_j p_{ji}$  与

从  $i$  位置流出的总流量  $\pi_i(1 - p_{ii})$  是相等的, 即  $\sum_j \pi_j p_{ji} = \pi_i$ . 进一步, 自然应该有进出任意子集  $A$  的概率流相等:

**Proposition 1.21.** *A distribution  $\pi$  is invariant for  $P$  iff for any  $A \subset I$ ,*

$$\sum_{i \notin A, j \in A} \pi_i p_{ij} = \sum_{i \in A, j \notin A} \pi_i p_{ij}. \quad (1.10)$$

*Proof.* Sufficiency is obvious. To show necessity, we observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i \notin A, j \in A} \pi_i p_{ij} + \sum_{i \in A, j \in A} \pi_i p_{ij} &= \sum_{j \in A, i \in I} \pi_i p_{ij} = \sum_{j \in A} \pi_j. \\ \sum_{i \in A, j \notin A} \pi_j p_{ji} + \sum_{i \in A, j \in A} \pi_i p_{ij} &= \sum_{i \in A, j \in I} \pi_i p_{ij} = \sum_{i \in A} \pi_i. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\sum_{i \in A, j \in A} \pi_i p_{ij} < \infty$ , (1.10) holds.  $\square$

**Remark.** This proposition may be not true for measure  $\lambda$ , since  $\sum_{i \in A, j \in A} \lambda_i p_{ij}$  may be  $\infty$ .

¶ **EXAMPLE 1.23** (Birth-death chain). Consider the existence of invariant distributions for birth-death chain mentioned in [Example 1.2](#).  $b_0 = 1$ . If  $\pi$  is an invariant distribution, by [Proposition 1.21](#),  $\pi_0 = \pi_1 d_1$  and

$$\pi_i d_i = \pi_{i-1} b_{i-1}, \quad \forall i \geq 1.$$

Thus

$$\pi_i = \frac{b_{i-1}}{d_i} \pi_{i-1} = \cdots = \frac{b_0 b_1 \cdots b_{i-1}}{d_1 d_2 \cdots d_i} \pi_0 = \hat{\gamma}_i \pi_0, \quad \forall i \geq 1.$$

where the final equality defines  $\hat{\gamma}_i$  for  $i \geq 1$ . Let  $\hat{\gamma}_0 = 1$  and  $\hat{R} = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \hat{\gamma}_i$ . Then we have  $\hat{R} \pi_0 = 1$ .

- (i) In the case  $\hat{R} = \infty$ , this contradicts that  $\pi$  is a distribution. So the chain has no invariant distribution.
- (ii) But if  $\hat{R} < \infty$ , then let  $\pi_i = \frac{\hat{\gamma}_i}{\hat{R}}$  for all  $i \geq 0$ . It's easy to check that  $\pi$  is an invariant distribution, and is unique!

¶ **EXAMPLE 1.24.** A transition matrix  $P$  is said to be **doubly stochastic** if its COLUMNS sum to 1, or in symbols  $\sum_{i \in I} p_{ij} = 1$ . The adjective “doubly” refers to the fact that by its definition a transition probability matrix has ROWS that sum to 1, i.e.,  $\sum_{j \in I} p_{ij} = 1$ .

- (i) If  $P$  is a doubly stochastic transition probability, then the uniform measure,  $\pi_i = 1$  for all  $i$ , is invariant.
- (ii) If  $P$  is a doubly stochastic transition probability for a Markov chain with  $N$  states, then the uniform distribution,  $\pi_i = \frac{1}{N}$  for all  $i$ , is invariant.

¶ **EXAMPLE 1.25.** 设  $I = \mathbb{N}_+$ , 转移概率为: 对于  $i \geq 1$ ,  $p_{i,i-1} = \lambda/(\lambda+1)$ ,  $p_{i,i+k} = p_k/(\lambda+1)$ ,  $\forall k \geq 1$ ;  $p_{01} = 1$ . 其中  $1 = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} p_k < m := \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} kp_k < \lambda$ . 求该马氏链的不变分布.

解. 首先, 出入 0 的概率流相等, 即  $\pi_0 = \pi_1 \lambda/(\lambda+1)$ . 其次, 对任意  $i \geq 2$ , 令  $A = \{n : n \geq i\}$ , 进入  $A$  的概率流为  $\sum_{j=1}^{i-1} \sum_{k=i}^{\infty} \pi_j p_{j,k} = \sum_{j=1}^{i-1} \pi_j f_{i-j}/(\lambda+1)$ , 其中  $f_r := \sum_{k=r}^{\infty} p_k$ ; 出  $A$  的概率流为  $\pi_i \lambda/(\lambda+1)$ , 于是

$$\pi_i = \frac{1}{\lambda} \sum_{j=1}^{i-1} \pi_j f_{i-j}, \quad \forall i \geq 2$$

对  $i$  求和

$$1 - \pi_0 - \pi_1 = \frac{1}{\lambda} \sum_{i=2}^{\infty} \sum_{j=1}^{i-1} \pi_j f_{i-j} = \frac{1}{\lambda} \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \sum_{i=j+1}^{\infty} \pi_j f_{i-j} = \frac{1}{\lambda} \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \pi_j \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} f_r = \frac{m}{\lambda} (1 - \pi_0)$$

其中

$$\sum_{r=1}^{\infty} f_r = \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} \sum_{k=r}^{\infty} p_k = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \sum_{r=1}^k p_k = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} kp_k = m$$

因此解出

$$\pi_0 = \frac{\lambda - m}{\lambda - m + \lambda + 1}, \quad \pi_1 = \frac{\lambda - m}{\lambda - m + \lambda + 1} \frac{\lambda}{\lambda + 1}$$

根据上面的递推式得到  $\pi_i$ ,  $i \geq 2$ . □

### 1.5.2 Existence and uniqueness of invariant measures

In this subsection, we will discuss the existence and uniqueness of invariant measures and distributions for general Markov chains. Recall that a measure  $\lambda$  is invariant iff for any  $i, j$  in  $I$ ,

$$\lambda_i = \sum_{j \in I} \lambda_j p_{ji}$$

It's obvious that if the  $c\lambda$  is invariant for any constant  $c$ . Hence, without loss of generality we choose some  $k \in I$  and set  $\lambda_k = 1$ .

#### A sufficient condition for existence of invariant measures

In [Theorem 1.8](#), we proved that the absorption probabilities is the minimal non-negative solutions for (1.2), by iterating over the equations system. Now, we can guess, is the invariant measure the minimal non-negative solution of the equations system above ?

For each  $i \neq k$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda_i &= \sum_{i_1 \in I} \lambda_{i_1} p_{i_1 i} = \sum_{i_1 \neq k} \lambda_{i_1} p_{i_1 i} + p_{ki} \\ &= \sum_{i_1, i_2 \neq k} \lambda_{i_2} p_{i_2 i_1} p_{i_1 i} + \left( p_{ki} + \sum_{i_1 \neq k} p_{ki_1} p_{i_1 i} \right) \\ &= \sum_{i_1, \dots, i_n \neq k} \lambda_{i_n} p_{i_n i_{n-1}} \cdots p_{i_1 i} \\ &\quad + \left( p_{ki} + \sum_{i_1 \neq k} p_{ki_1} p_{i_1 i} + \cdots + \sum_{i_1, \dots, i_{n-1} \neq k} p_{ki_{n-1}} \cdots p_{i_2 i_1} p_{i_1 i} \right). \end{aligned}$$

Hence we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda_i &\geq \mathbb{P}_k(X_1 = i \text{ and } \sigma_k > 1) + \mathbb{P}_k(X_2 = i \text{ and } \sigma_k > 2) \\ &\quad + \cdots + \mathbb{P}_k(X_n = i \text{ and } \sigma_k > n). \end{aligned}$$

Letting  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,

$$\lambda_i \geq \mathbb{E}_k \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 1_{\{X_n=i, n < \sigma_k\}} = \mathbb{E}_k \sum_{1 \leq n < \sigma_k} 1_{\{X_n=i\}}.$$

On the other hand, we have  $\lambda_k = 1$ . So we rewrite the right-hand-side as following

$$\lambda_i \geq \mathbb{E}_k \sum_{0 \leq n < \sigma_k} 1_{\{X_n=i\}}, \text{ for all } i \in I.$$

In right-hand-side, the sum of indicator functions serves to count the number of times  $n$  at which  $X_n = i$  before the first passage time  $\sigma_k$ , it is exactly **the expected time spent in  $i$  between visits to  $k$** . We give it a notation:

$$\gamma_i^k := \mathbb{E}_k \sum_{0 \leq n < \sigma_k} 1_{\{X_n=i\}}.$$

Obviously,  $\gamma_k^k = 1$ . Next, we will check if  $\gamma^k = (\gamma_i^k)_{i \in I}$  is a invariant measure for  $P$ .

**Theorem 1.22.** *Suppose  $k$  is recurrent. Then  $\gamma^k = (\gamma_i^k)_{i \in I}$  is an invariant measure for  $P$ .*

**Remark.** Why is this true? This is called the “*cycle trick*”.  $\gamma_i^k$  is the expected number of visits to  $i$  in  $\{0, \dots, \sigma_k - 1\}$ . Multiplying by  $P$  moves us forward one unit in time so  $(\gamma^k P)_i$  is the expected number of visits to  $i$  in  $\{1, \dots, \sigma_k\}$ . We need the condition  $k$  is recurrent, then  $X_{\sigma_k} = X_0 = k$ , it follows that  $\gamma^k P = \gamma^k$ .

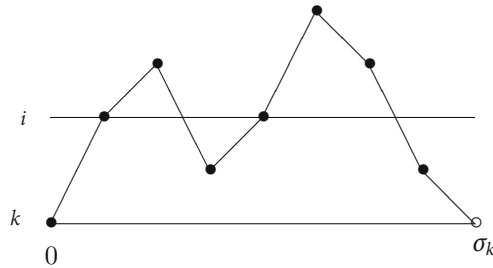


Figure 1.5: cycle trick

*Proof.* For any  $j \in I$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{i \in I} \gamma_i^k p_{ij} &= \sum_{i \in I} p_{ij} \mathbb{E}_k \sum_{n=0}^{\sigma_k-1} 1_{\{X_n=i\}} = \sum_{i \in I} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_{ij} \mathbb{P}_k(X_n=i, n < \sigma_k) \\
&= \sum_{i \in I} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_k(X_n=i, X_{n+1}=j, n < \sigma_k) \\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_k(X_{n+1}=j, n < \sigma_k) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_k(X_n=j, n \leq \sigma_k) \\
&= \mathbb{E}_k \sum_{n=1}^{\sigma_k} 1_{\{X_n=j\}}
\end{aligned}$$

Since  $k$  is recurrent, under  $\mathbb{P}_k$  we have  $\sigma_k < \infty$ , then  $X_0 = X_{\sigma_k} = k$ . So we have

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\sigma_k-1} 1_{\{X_n=j\}} = \sum_{n=1}^{\sigma_k} 1_{\{X_n=j\}}, \quad \mathbb{P}_k\text{-a.s.}$$

So we get  $\sum_{i \in I} \gamma_i^k p_{ij} = \gamma_j^k$ , in other words,  $\gamma^k P = \gamma^k$ .  $\square$

**Remark.** Without the condition that  $k$  is recurrent, we only have

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\sigma_k-1} 1_{\{X_n=j\}} = \sum_{n=1}^{\sigma_k} 1_{\{X_n=j\}} + 1_{\{X_0=j, \sigma_k=\infty\}}.$$

So in this case,  $\gamma^k$  is not always invariant.

Now we have a sufficient condition for the existence of invariant measure.

**Corollary 1.23.** *If Markov chain has a recurrent state, then invariant measures exist.*

**Remark.** *The existence of an invariant measure does not guarantee recurrence, even if the chain is irreducible.* For a counterexample,

¶ **EXAMPLE 1.26.** Consider the simple symmetric random walk on  $\mathbb{Z}^3$ , which is transient by [Example 1.17](#), but has an invariant measure  $\pi$  given by  $\pi_i = 1$  for all  $i$ .

### A sufficient condition for uniqueness of invariant measures

Let  $k \in I$  be recurrent and  $C$  is the communicating class containing  $k$ . Then  $C$  is closed, so there must be  $\gamma_i^k = 0$  for all  $i \notin C$ . Hence  $(\gamma_i^k)_{i \in C}$  is invariant for  $P|_C$ , and  $P|_C$  is irreducible. So if  $I$  has two distinct recurrent class, the invariant measures for  $P$  is not unique. Therefore, now we only need to discuss the case that  $P$  is irreducible and recurrent.

First, we point that the invariant measures for an irreducible Markov chain has an important property:

**Lemma 1.24.** *Let  $P$  be irreducible. If  $\lambda$  is an invariant measure for  $P$ , then  $\lambda = 0$ , or  $0 < \lambda < \infty$ . Paricularly, if  $\pi$  is an invariant distribution for  $P$ , then  $\pi_i > 0$  for all  $i$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\lambda$  is a invariant measure for  $P$ . If there exists some  $i \in I$  such that  $\lambda_i > 0$ , for any  $j \in I$ , pick  $n$  satisfying  $p_{ij}^{(n)} > 0$ , then  $\lambda_j \geq \lambda_i p_{ij}^{(n)} > 0$ .  $\square$

Now, we give a sufficient condition for the uniqueness of invariant measures:

**Theorem 1.25.** *Let  $P$  be irreducible and recurrent. Let  $\lambda$  be an invariant measure for  $P$  with  $\lambda_k = 1$  for some  $k \in I$ , then  $\lambda = \gamma^k$ . In other words,  $P$  has an unique invariant measures up to scalar multiples.*

*Proof.* We have proved  $\lambda \geq \gamma^k$ . Since  $P$  is recurrent,  $\gamma^k$  is invariant by [Theorem 1.22](#). So  $\mu = \lambda - \gamma^k$  is also an invariant measure for  $P$ . Since  $P$  is irreducible, by [Lemma 1.24](#), since  $\mu_k = 0$  we know  $\mu \equiv 0$ , so  $\lambda = \gamma^k$ .  $\square$

**Remark.** When  $I$  has only one recurrent class, but is not irreducible, the invariant measure may be not unique up to scalar multiples. For an example,

¶ **EXAMPLE 1.27.** Consider the chain on  $\mathbb{Z} \cup \{\infty\}$ . Let  $p_{i,i+1} = 1$  for  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ , and , and  $p_{\infty\infty} = 1$ . Then  $P$  is transient, and  $1_\infty, 1_\mathbb{Z}$  both are invariant.



**Corollary 1.26.** *Let  $P$  be irreducible and recurrent. Then if  $P$  has an invariant distribution, it must be unique.*

¶ **EXAMPLE 1.28.** Consider the asymmetric random walk on  $\mathbb{Z}$  with transition probabilities  $p_{i,i-1} = q < p = p_{i,i+1}$ . In components the invariant measure equation  $\lambda P = \lambda$  reads

$$\lambda_i = \lambda_{i-1}p + \lambda_{i+1}q$$

This is a recurrence relation for  $\lambda$  with general solution

$$\lambda_i = A + B\left(\frac{p}{q}\right)^i$$

So, in this case, there is a two-parameter family of invariant measures uniqueness up to scalar multiples does not hold.

### 1.5.3 Existence and uniqueness of invariant distributions

Obviously, if  $P$  has a invariant measures  $\lambda$  and  $\Lambda := \sum_{i \in I} \lambda_i < \infty$ . Then let

$$\pi_i = \frac{\lambda_i}{\Lambda} \text{ for all } i \in I.$$

Then  $\pi$  is an invariant distribution for  $P$ . Note that

$$\sum_{j \in I} \gamma_j^i = \sum_{j \in I} \mathbb{E}_i \sum_{0 \leq n < \sigma_i} 1_{\{X_n=j\}} = \mathbb{E}_i \sum_{0 \leq n < \sigma_i} \sum_{j \in I} 1_{\{X_n=j\}} = \mathbb{E}_i (\sigma_i)$$

is exactly **the expected return time to  $i$**  when starting from  $i$ , and we give it a notation

$$m_i := \mathbb{E}_i (\sigma_i) = \sum_{j \in I} \gamma_j^i.$$

Now, it's natural to introduce the following definition :

**Definition 1.4.** We say a state  $i$  is **positive recurrent** if  $m_i < \infty$ , and a recurrent state which fails to have this stronger property is called **null recurrent**.

Thus, if  $I$  has a positive recurrent  $i$ , by normalizing  $\gamma^i$ , we get an invariant distribution  $\pi = \frac{\gamma^i}{m_i}$ . Let  $C$  be the communicating class containing  $i$ , which is closed, then  $\sum_{i \in C} \pi_i = 1$ , and  $(\pi_i)_{i \in C}$  is invariant for irreducible transition matrix  $P|_C$ . Thus we focus on the case that  $P$  is irreducible first.

The next theorem says that positive recurrence is a class property. And an irreducible chain has invariant distribution  $\Leftrightarrow$  it has unique invariant distribution  $\Leftrightarrow$  it is positive recurrent.

**Theorem 1.27.** *Let  $P$  be irreducible. Then the following are equivalent:*

- (i) every state is positive recurrent.
- (ii) some state  $i$  is positive recurrent.
- (iii)  $P$  has an invariant distribution.
- (iv)  $P$  has an unique invariant distribution  $\pi$  and  $\pi_i = \frac{1}{m_i}$  for all  $i \in I$ .

*Proof.*  $1 \Rightarrow 2$  is obvious.

$2 \Rightarrow 3$ . If  $i$  is positive recurrent, so  $P$  is recurrent. By [Theorem 1.22](#),  $\gamma^i$  is then invariant. But

$$\sum_{j \in I} \gamma_j^i = m_i < \infty.$$

So  $\pi = \frac{1}{m_i} \gamma^i$  defines an invariant distribution for  $P$ .

$3 \Rightarrow 1$ . Take any state  $k$ , Since  $P$  is irreducible and  $\sum_{i \in I} \pi_i = 1$  we have  $\pi > 0$  by [Lemma 1.24](#). Hence  $\pi_k > 0$ . Set  $\lambda = \frac{1}{\pi_k} \pi$ , then  $\lambda$  is invariant with  $\lambda_k = 1$ . By [Theorem 1.25](#),  $\gamma^k \leq \lambda$ , so

$$m_k = \sum_{i \in I} \gamma_i^k \leq \sum_{i \in I} \frac{\pi_i}{\pi_k} = \frac{1}{\pi_k} < \infty$$

and  $k$  is positive recurrent.

$3 \Leftrightarrow 4$ . First,  $4 \Rightarrow 3$  is obvious. Second, we prove  $3 \Rightarrow 4$ . Since 3 implies 1, we know  $P$  is recurrent, so the invariant distribution must be unique.

At the same time, assume  $\pi$  is an invariant distribution, from [Theorem 1.25](#),  $\frac{1}{\pi_k} \pi = \gamma^k$  for all  $k \in I$ . Therefore  $m_k = \sum_{i \in I} \gamma_i^k = \sum_{i \in I} \frac{\pi_i}{\pi_k} = \frac{1}{\pi_k}$ . we have  $\pi_k = \frac{1}{m_k}$  for all  $k \in I$ .  $\square$

Now we can give a necessary and sufficient condition for the existence and uniqueness of invariant distributions.

**Theorem 1.28.**  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be Markov chain on  $I$  with transition matrix  $P$ .

- (i)  $P$  has invariant distributions if and only if  $I$  has a positive recurrent class. In this case, let  $\pi$  one invariant distributions, then  $\pi_i = \frac{\pi([i])}{m_i}$  for all  $i \in I$ , where  $[i]$  is the communicating class containing  $i$ .
- (ii)  $P$  has unique invariant distribution, if and only if  $I$  has unique positive recurrent class. In this case, let  $\pi$  the invariant distributions, and  $C$  is the unique positive recurrent class. Then  $\pi_i = \frac{1}{m_i}$  for all  $i \in C$ , and  $\pi_i = 0$  for all  $i \in I \setminus C$ .

¶ **EXAMPLE 1.29** (Simple symmetric random walk on  $\mathbb{Z}$ ). The simple symmetric random walk on  $\mathbb{Z}$  is clearly irreducible and, by [Example 1.17](#) it is also recurrent. Consider the measure  $\lambda_i = 1$  for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then

$$\lambda_i = \frac{1}{2} \lambda_{i-1} + \frac{1}{2} \lambda_{i+1}$$

so  $\lambda$  is invariant. Now [Theorem 1.25](#) forces any invariant measure to be a scalar multiple of  $\lambda$ . Since  $\sum_{i \in \mathbb{Z}} \lambda_i = \infty$ , there can be no invariant distribution and the walk is therefore null recurrent, by [Theorem 1.27](#).

¶ **EXAMPLE 1.30** (Success-run chain). Consider a *success-run chain* on  $\mathbb{N}$ , whose transition probabilities are given by

$$p_{i,i+1} = p_i > 0, \quad p_{i0} = q_i = 1 - p_i > 0 \quad \forall i \geq 0.$$

Note that For any  $n \geq 1$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}_0(\sigma_0 > n) = p_0 \cdots p_{n-1}.$$

Thus, the chain is recurrent if and only if  $p = \prod_{i=0}^{\infty} p_i = 0$ . On the other hand, we compute that

$$\mathbb{E}_0(\sigma_0) = 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} p_0 \cdots p_{n-1}.$$

- If  $\mathbb{E}_0(\sigma_0) = \infty$ , the chain is null recurrent.
- If  $\mathbb{E}_0(\sigma_0) < \infty$ , the chain is positive recurrent.

## EXERCISE

¶ *EXERCISE 1.31.* Show that Any Markov chain on finite space  $I$  has a invariant distribution.

¶ *EXERCISE 1.32.* Let  $P$  be a stochastic matrix on a finite set  $I$ . Show that a distribution  $\pi$  is invariant for  $P$  if and only if  $\pi(I - P + A) = a$ , where  $A = (a_{ij} : i, j \in I)$  with  $a_{ij} = 1$  for all  $i$  and  $j$ , and  $a = (a_i : i \in I)$  with  $a_i = 1$  for all  $i$ . Deduce that if  $P$  is irreducible then  $I - P + A$  is invertible. *Note that this enables one to compute the invariant distribution by any standard method of inverting a matrix.*

¶ *EXERCISE 1.33.* Prove that for any  $i, j \in I$ ,

$$\gamma_j^i = \frac{\mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_j < \sigma_i)}{\mathbb{P}_j(\sigma_i < \sigma_j)}$$

## 1.6 Time reversal and detailed balance condition

For Markov chains, the past and future are independent given the present. This property is symmetrical in time and suggests looking at Markov chains with time running backwards. On the other hand, convergence to equilibrium (see [Theorem 1.39](#)) shows behaviour which is asymmetrical in time: *a highly organised state such as a point mass decays to a disorganised one, the invariant distribution*. This is an example of entropy increasing. It suggests that if we want complete time-symmetry we must begin in equilibrium.

We want to show that a Markov chain in equilibrium, run backwards, is again a Markov chain (the transition matrix may however be different). When discussing the time reversal, without loss of generality, we assume  $P$  is irreducible, since all the mass is concentrated at the closed positive recurrent classes when the chain is in equilibrium.

**Theorem 1.29.** *Let  $P$  be irreducible and have an invariant distribution  $\pi$ . Suppose that  $(X_n)_{0 \leq n \leq N}$  is Markov( $\pi, P$ ) and set  $Y_n = X_{N-n}$ . Then  $(Y_n)_{0 \leq n \leq N}$  is Markov( $\pi, \hat{P}$ ), where  $\hat{P} = (\hat{p}_{ij})_{i,j \in I}$  is given by*

$$\hat{p}_{ji} = \frac{\pi_i p_{ij}}{\pi_j} \quad \text{for all } i, j \in I.$$

and  $\hat{P}$  is also irreducible with invariant distribution  $\pi$ .

*Proof.* We need to calculate the conditional probability. For any  $0 < n < N$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(Y_{n+1} = j \mid Y_n = i, Y_{n-1} = i_{n-1}, \dots, Y_0 = i_0) \\ &= \mathbb{P}(X_{N-(n+1)} = j \mid X_{N-n} = i, X_{N-n+1} = i_{n-1}, \dots, X_N = i_0) \\ &= \mathbb{P}(X_{N-(n+1)} = j \mid X_{N-n} = i) = \frac{\pi_i p_{ij}}{\pi_j}. \end{aligned}$$

This shows  $(Y_n)_{0 \leq n \leq N}$  is a Markov chain with the indicated transition probability. It's easy to check  $\pi$  is invariant for  $\hat{P}$ .  $\square$

The chain  $(Y_n)_{0 \leq n \leq N}$  is called the **time-reversal** of  $(X_n)_{0 \leq n \leq N}$ . We say that  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is reversible if, for all  $N \geq 1$ ,  $(X_{N-n})_{0 \leq n \leq N}$  is also Markov

$(\lambda, P)$ , which is equiliwant to

$$\pi_i p_{ij} = \pi_j p_{ji}, \text{ for all } i, j.$$

**Definition 1.5.** A stochastic matrix  $P$  and a measure  $\lambda$  are said to be in **detailed balance** if

$$\lambda_i p_{ij} = \lambda_j p_{ji}, \text{ for all } i, j.$$

$\lambda$  is called **symmetric measure** (配称测度) and  $P$  is **symmetrizable** (可配称). In addition, if  $\pi$  is distribution,  $P$  and  $\pi$  in detailed balance, we say  $\pi$  is an **reversible distribution** for  $P$ .

**Remark.**

- (i) Obviously, if  $P$  and  $\lambda$  are in detailed balance, then  $\lambda$  is invariant for  $P$ . So when a solution  $\lambda$  to the detailed balance equations exists, it is often easier to find by the detailed balance equations than by the equation  $\lambda = \lambda P$ .
- (ii) Let  $P$  be an irreducible stochastic matrix and  $\pi$  is the invariant distribution. Let  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be Markov( $\pi, P$ ).  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is reversible if and only if  $P$  and  $\pi$  are in detailed balance.

**Theorem 1.30 (Kolmogorov cycle condition).**  $P$  is irreducible and has stationary distribution  $\pi$ . Then  $\pi$  is reversible if and only if the cycle condition is satisfied: given any cycle of states  $i_0, i_1, \dots, i_n = i_0$ , we have

$$p_{i_0 i_1} \cdots p_{i_{n-1} i_n} = p_{i_n i_{n-1}} \cdots p_{i_1 i_0}.$$

*Proof. Necessity :* Detailed balance implies

$$\pi_{i_0} p_{i_0 i_1} \cdots p_{i_{n-1} i_n} = \pi_{i_n} p_{i_n i_{n-1}} \cdots p_{i_1 i_0}.$$

Since  $i_n = i_0$ , and  $\pi_{i_0} > 0$ , the cycle condition holds.

*Sufficiency* : Suppose that the cycle condition holds. Let  $i \in I$  and set  $\lambda_i = 1$ . For  $j \neq i$  in  $I$  let  $i = i_0, \dots, i_k = j$  be a path from  $i$  to  $j$  with  $p_{i_{n-1}, i_n} > 0$  for  $1 \leq n \leq k$  (and hence  $p_{i_n, i_{n-1}} > 0$  for  $1 \leq n \leq k$ ). Let

$$\lambda_j = \frac{p_{i_0, i_1} \cdots p_{i_{k-1}, i_k}}{p_{i_k, i_{k-1}} \cdots p_{i_1, i_0}}.$$

The first step is to show that  $\lambda_j$  is well defined, i.e., is independent of the path chosen. Let  $l_0 = i, \dots, l_m = j$  be another path from  $i$  to  $j$  with  $p_{l_{n-1}, l_n} > 0$  for  $1 \leq n \leq m$  (and hence  $p_{l_n, l_{n-1}} > 0$  for  $1 \leq n \leq m$ ). Combine these to get a loop that begins and ends at  $i$ . Thus, by cycle condition

$$p_{i_0, i_1} \cdots p_{i_{k-1}, i_k} p_{l_m, l_{m-1}} \cdots p_{l_1, l_0} = p_{l_0, l_1} \cdots p_{l_{m-1}, l_m} p_{i_k, i_{k-1}} \cdots p_{i_1, i_0}$$

Which means that

$$\frac{p_{i_0, i_1} \cdots p_{i_{k-1}, i_k}}{p_{i_k, i_{k-1}} \cdots p_{i_1, i_0}} = \frac{p_{l_0, l_1} \cdots p_{l_{m-1}, l_m}}{p_{l_m, l_{m-1}} \cdots p_{l_1, l_0}}.$$

This shows that the definition is independent of the path chosen. Obviously,  $\lambda$  and  $P$  are in detailed balance. Since  $P$  is irreducible, has a invariant distribution  $\pi$ ,  $\lambda$  is a scalar mutipile of  $\pi$ . Then  $\pi$  and  $P$  are in detailed balance, so  $\pi$  is reverable.  $\square$

## 1.7 Long-run behavior of irreducible chains (I): Ergodic theorems

Ergodic theorems concern the limiting behaviour of averages over time. We shall prove a theorem which identifies for Markov chains the long-run proportion of time spent in each state. An essential tool is the following ergodic theorem for independent random variables which is a version of the strong law of large numbers.

**Theorem (Strong law of large numbers).** *Let  $\{\xi_n\}$  be a sequence of independent, identically distributed, random variables with  $\mathbb{E}\xi_1$  exists. Then as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,*

$$\frac{\xi_1 + \cdots + \xi_n}{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{E}\xi_1 \text{ a.s.}$$

We denote by  $V_i(n)$  the **number of visits to  $i$  before  $n$** ,

$$V_i(n) := \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} 1_{\{X_k=i\}}$$

Then  $\frac{V_i(n)}{n}$  can be interpreted as the *proportion of time before  $n$  spent in state  $i$ .*, or the *average number of times the chain appears at state  $i$* . The following result gives the long-run proportion of time spent by a Markov chain in each state.

**Theorem 1.31 (Ergodic theorem I).**  *$(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is Markov( $\lambda, P$ ) and  $P$  is irreducible. Then as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,*

$$\frac{V_i(n)}{n} \rightarrow \frac{1}{m_i}, \text{ } \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.} \tag{1.11}$$

where  $m_i = \mathbb{E}_i(\sigma_i)$  is the expected return time to state  $i$ .

*Proof.* If  $P$  is transient, then, with probability 1, the total number  $V_i$  of visits to  $i$  is finite, so

$$\frac{V_i(n)}{n} \leq \frac{V_i}{n} \rightarrow 0 = \frac{1}{m_i}.$$



Suppose then that  $P$  is recurrent. Fix a state  $i$ , we have  $\mathbb{P}(\sigma_i < \infty) = 1$ . So  $(X_{\sigma_i+n})_{n \geq 0}$  is Markov  $(\delta_i, P)$  and independent of  $(X_0, \dots, X_{\sigma_i})$  by the strong Markov property. The long-run proportion of time spent in  $i$  is the same for  $(X_{\sigma_i+n})_{n \geq 0}$  and  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$ , so it suffices to consider the case  $\lambda = \delta_i$ .

Write  $\sigma_i^{(r)}$  for the length of the  $r$  th excursion to  $i$ , as in [Section 1.4](#). By [Corollary 1.12](#), the non-negative random variables  $\sigma_i^{(1)}, \sigma_i^{(2)}, \dots$  are independent and identically distributed with  $\mathbb{E}_i(\sigma_i) = m_i$ . Notw that

$$\sigma_i^{(1)} + \dots + \sigma_i^{(V_i(n)-1)} \leq n - 1$$

the left-hand side being the time of the last visit to  $i$  before  $n$ . Also

$$\sigma_i^{(1)} + \dots + \sigma_i^{(V_i(n))} \geq n$$

the left-hand side being the time of the first visit to  $i$  after  $n - 1$ . Hence

$$\frac{\sigma_i^{(1)} + \dots + \sigma_i^{(V_i(n)-1)}}{V_i(n)} \leq \frac{n}{V_i(n)} \leq \frac{\sigma_i^{(1)} + \dots + \sigma_i^{(V_i(n))}}{V_i(n)} \quad (1.12)$$

By the strong law of large numbers

$$\mathbb{P}_i \left( \frac{\sigma_i^{(1)} + \dots + \sigma_i^{(n)}}{n} \rightarrow m_i \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty \right) = 1$$

and, since  $P$  is recurrent  $\mathbb{P}_i(V_i(n) \rightarrow \infty \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty) = 1$ . So, letting  $n \rightarrow \infty$  in (1.12), we get  $\mathbb{P}_i \left( \frac{n}{V_i(n)} \rightarrow m_i \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty \right) = 1$ , which implies

$$\mathbb{P}_i \left( \frac{V_i(n)}{n} \rightarrow \frac{1}{m_i} \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty \right) = 1. \quad \square$$

Ergodic theorem implies the *uniqueness* of invariant distribution for irreducible Markov chain.

**Corollary 1.32.**  *$P$  is irreducible,  $\pi$  is an invariant distribution for  $P$ . Then  $\pi_i = \frac{1}{m_i}$  for all state  $i$ .*

*Proof.* Note that for any state  $i$ ,

$$\mathbb{E}_\pi \frac{V_i(n)}{n} = \mathbb{E}_\pi \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} 1_{\{X_k=i\}} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \mathbb{P}_\pi(X_k = i) = \pi_i$$

From ergodic theorem we know  $V_i(n)/n \rightarrow \pi_i$   $\mathbb{P}_\pi$ -a.s., by dominated limits theorem we know

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbb{E}_\pi \frac{V_i(n)}{n} = \mathbb{E}_\pi \left( \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{V_i(n)}{n} \right) = \pi_i$$

Thus  $\pi_i = \pi_i$  . □

**Corollary 1.33.**  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is Markov  $(\lambda, P)$ , and  $P$  is irreducible,  $\pi$  is the (unique) stationary distribution for  $P$ . Then we have

$$\sum_{i \in I} \left| \frac{V_i(n)}{n} - \pi_i \right| \rightarrow 0, \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.}$$

*Proof.* Given  $\varepsilon > 0$ , choose  $J \subset I$  finite so that  $\sum_{i \notin J} \pi_i < \varepsilon$ . By [Theorem 1.31](#) and [Corollary 1.32](#), we have  $\sum_{i \in J} \left| \frac{V_i(n)}{n} - \pi_i \right| \rightarrow 0, \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.}$  And

$$\sum_{i \in I} \left| \frac{V_i(n)}{n} - \pi_i \right| = \sum_{i \in J} \left| \frac{V_i(n)}{n} - \pi_i \right| + \sum_{i \notin J} \left| \frac{V_i(n)}{n} - \pi_i \right|$$

Note that

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i \notin J} \left| \frac{V_i(n)}{n} - \pi_i \right| &\leq \sum_{i \notin J} \frac{V_i(n)}{n} + \sum_{i \notin J} \pi_i \\ &\leq \sum_{i \notin J} \frac{V_i(n)}{n} - \sum_{i \notin J} \pi_i + 2\varepsilon \\ &\leq \sum_{i \notin J} \left| \frac{V_i(n)}{n} - \pi_i \right| + 2\varepsilon \end{aligned}$$

Let  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , since  $\varepsilon$  is arbitrary we have  $\sum_{i \in I} \left| \frac{V_i(n)}{n} - \pi_i \right| \rightarrow 0, \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.}$  □

**Remark.** Denote  $\mathcal{M}$  as all the distribution on  $I$ . For any  $\mu, \nu \in \mathcal{M}$ , define

$$d_{TV}(\mu, \nu) := \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i \in I} |\mu_i - \nu_i| \quad (1.13)$$

and call it the **total variation distance** between  $\mu$  and  $\nu$ . It's easy to compute that

$$d_{TV}(\mu, \nu) = \sup_{A \subset I} |\mu(A) - \nu(A)| = \sup_{0 \leq f_i \leq 1, \forall i} \left| \sum_i (\mu_i - \nu_i) f_i \right| \quad (1.14)$$

So [Corollary 1.33](#) means that the “statistics” distribution is convergent to the stationary distribution in  $d_{TV}$ , with probability one.

Back to the proof of [Corollary 1.33](#), in fact we had got the following conclusion:

**Proposition 1.34.**  $\mathcal{M}$  as all the distribution on  $I$ . For any  $\nu_n, \mu \in \mathcal{M}$ ,  $\nu_n \rightarrow \mu$  in  $d_{TV}$  if and only if  $\nu_n\{i\} \rightarrow \mu\{i\}$  for all  $i \in I$ .

Now using [Corollary 1.33](#), we have the following

**Theorem 1.35 (Ergodic theorem II).**  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is Markov  $(\lambda, P)$  is irreducible and positive recurrent.  $\pi$  is the (unique) invariant distribution for  $P$ . For any bounded function  $f : I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  we have

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} f(X_k) \rightarrow \int_I f d\pi, \quad \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.} \quad (1.15)$$

**Remark.** 将  $f$  看做对每个状态的观测, 那么遍历定理是在说, 观测的时间平均 (的极限) 等于空间平均.

*Proof.* Note that

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} f(X_k) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \sum_{i \in I} 1_{\{X_k=i\}} f(i) = \sum_{i \in I} \frac{V_i(n)}{n} f(i)$$

and  $\int_I f \, d\pi = \sum_{i \in I} \pi_i f(i)$ . Then we have

$$\left| \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} f(X_k) - \int_I f \, d\pi \right| \leq \sum_{i \in I} \left| \frac{V_i(n)}{n} - \pi_i \right| |f(i)|.$$

Therefore, as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,

$$\left| \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} f(X_k) - \int_I f \, d\pi \right| \rightarrow 0, \quad \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.} \quad \square$$

**Remark.**

- (i) In fact, for any  $f \in L_1(\pi)$ , this ergodic theorem holds.

The key idea here is that by *breaking the path at the return times to some state  $i$* , we get a sequence of *i.i.d.* random variables to which we can apply the law of large numbers.

*Proof.* With out loss of generality, we assume  $f$  is nonnegative. Take any state  $i$ , let  $T_i^{(0)} = 0$  and  $T_i^{(k)} = \inf\{n \geq T_i^{(k-1)} + 1 : X_n = i\}$  be the  $k$ -th passage time.

$$W_k = \sum_{m=T_i^{(k)}}^{T_i^{(k+1)}-1} f(X_m), \quad k \geq 0$$

By the strong Markov property, the random variables  $W_1, W_2, \dots$  are i.i.d.. When computing  $\mathbb{E}W_1$ , we want to change the order of summation and integration, so we use Fubini theorem :

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{E}W_1 &= \mathbb{E} \sum_{m=T_i^{(1)}}^{T_i^{(2)}-1} f(X_m) = \mathbb{E}_i \sum_{m=0}^{\sigma_i-1} f(X_m) \\ &= \mathbb{E}_i \sum_{j \in I} V_j(\sigma_i) f(j) = \sum_{j \in I} \mathbb{E}_i V_j(\sigma_i) f(j) \\ &= \sum_{j \in I} \gamma_j^i f(j) = \sum_{j \in I} \frac{\pi_j}{\pi_i} f(j) = \frac{1}{\pi_i} \mathbb{E}_\pi f < \infty. \end{aligned}$$

Using the law of large numbers for  $W_1, W_2, \dots$ , since  $W_0$  is finite a.s., then as  $r \rightarrow \infty$

$$\frac{1}{r} \sum_{k=0}^r W_k = \frac{1}{r} \sum_{m=0}^{T_i^{(r)}-1} f(X_m) \rightarrow \frac{1}{\pi_i} \int_I f d\pi, \quad \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.}$$

For any  $n \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , let  $V_i(n) = r$ , then we have  $T_i^{(r-1)} \leq n-1 < T_i^{(r)}$ , so

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{m=0}^{n-1} f(X_m) = \frac{r-1}{n} \cdot \frac{1}{r-1} \sum_{m=0}^{T_i^{(r-1)}-1} f(X_m) + \frac{1}{n} \sum_{m=T_i^{(r-1)}}^{n-1} f(X_m) \quad (1.16)$$

Using [Theorem 1.31](#), as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , we have

$$\frac{r-1}{n} = \frac{V_i(n)-1}{n} \rightarrow \pi_i, \quad \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.}$$

So as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $r \rightarrow \infty$ , hence as  $n \rightarrow \infty$

$$\frac{1}{r-1} \sum_{m=0}^{T_i^{(r-1)}-1} f(X_m) \rightarrow \frac{1}{\pi_i} \int_I f d\pi, \quad \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.}$$

Thus the first term on RHS in (1.16) converges to  $\mathbb{E}_\pi f$  a.s.. We only need to show that the second term converges to zero. Note that

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{m=T_i^{(r-1)}}^{n-1} f(X_m) \leq \frac{1}{n} \sum_{m=T_i^{(r-1)}}^{T_i^{(r)}-1} f(X_m) = \frac{W_{r-1}}{n},$$

and using strong law of large number, as  $r \rightarrow \infty$  we have

$$\frac{W_{r-1}}{n} = \frac{r-1}{n} \frac{Y_{r-1}}{r-1} - \frac{r-2}{n} \frac{Y_{r-2}}{r-2} \rightarrow \int_I f d\pi - \int_I f d\pi = 0, \quad \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.}$$

where  $Y_r := \sum_{k=1}^r W_k$ . Now we get the desired result.  $\square$

- (ii) For what reason this theorem is called “ergodic”? In fact, this theorem has a close links with the following assertion:  $A \subset I^\infty$  and  $\mathbb{P}_\pi(X \in A) > 0$ , where  $X = (X_n)_{n \geq 0}$ . Let  $Y_k := (X_{n+k})_{n \geq 0}$ , then

$$\mathbb{P}_\pi(\exists k \text{ s.t. } Y_k \in A) = 1.$$

This is “ergodic”. In fact, for any integrable  $f : I^\infty \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , we have

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} f(Y_k) \rightarrow \mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{P}_\pi} f(Y_0).$$

¶ *EXAMPLE 1.34.* Assume  $(X_n)$  is irreducible with stationary distribution  $\pi$ . We give a “genelization” of [Theorem 1.31](#), denote

$$V_{ij}(n) = \sum_{m=0}^{n-1} 1_{\{X_m=i, X_{m+1}=j\}}.$$

Then with probability one

$$\frac{V_{ij}(n)}{n} \rightarrow \pi_i p_{ij}, \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty$$

To see this, let  $Y_n = (X_n, X_{n+1})$ , then  $Y_n$  is a Markov chain on  $\tilde{I} := \{(i, j) : p_{ij} > 0\}$ , and  $\{\tilde{\pi}_{(i,j)} = \pi_i p_{ij} : (i, j) \in \tilde{I}\}$  is a stationary distribution. Then  $V_{ij}(n) = \sum_{m=0}^{n-1} 1_{\{Y_m=(i,j)\}}$ . Using [Theorem 1.31](#) we get the required result.

¶ *EXAMPLE 1.35* (Estimating the transition probability). We consider now the statistical problem of estimating an unknown recurrent transition matrix  $P$  on the basis of observations of the corresponding Markov chain. Consider, to begin, the case where we have  $n$  observations  $(X_0, \dots, X_{n-1})$ . The log-likelihood function is given by

$$l(P) = \log (\lambda_{X_0} p_{X_0 X_1} \cdots p_{X_{n-1} X_n}) = \sum_{i,j \in I} V_{ij}(n) \log p_{ij}$$

up to a constant independent of  $P$ , where  $V_{ij}(n)$  is the number of transitions from  $i$  to  $j$ . before time  $n$ , i.e.,

$$V_{ij}(n) = \sum_{m=0}^{n-1} 1_{\{X_m=i, X_{m+1}=j\}}.$$

A standard statistical procedure is to find the maximum likelihood estimate  $\hat{P}$ , which is the choice of  $P$  maximizing  $l(P)$ . Since  $P$  must satisfy

the linear constraint  $\sum_j p_{ij} = 1$  for each  $i$ , and  $p_{ij} \geq 0$ . Using Lagrange multipliers, we first try to maximize

$$l(P) + \sum_{i,j \in I} \lambda_i p_{ij}$$

and then choose  $(\lambda_i : i \in I)$  to fit the constraints. Thus we find

$$\hat{p}_{ij} = \frac{V_{ij}(n)}{V_i(n)},$$

which is the proportion of jumps from  $i$  which go to  $j$ .

We now turn to consider the *consistency* of this sort of estimate, that is to say whether  $\hat{p}_{ij} \rightarrow p_{ij}$  with probability one as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . To see this, we only need to combine [Theorem 1.31](#) and [Example 1.34](#).

Another way is using the [idea](#) in remark of ergodic theorem. For any  $k = 1, 2, \dots$ , let

$$\xi_k := 1_{\{X_{T_i^{(k)}+1}=j\}}.$$

Then  $V_{ij}(n) = \sum_{k=1}^r \xi_k$ , where  $r = \sum_{m=1}^{n-1} 1_{\{X_m=i\}} = V_i(n) - 1_{\{x_0=i\}}$ . Using strong Markov property we know  $\{\xi_k\}$  are i.i.d. r.v.'s with mean  $p_{ij}$ . So, by the strong law of large numbers, with probability one

$$\frac{\sum_{k=1}^r \xi_k}{r} \rightarrow p_{ij}, \quad \text{as } r \rightarrow \infty$$

Note that when  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $V_i(n) \rightarrow \infty$ . Thus

$$\frac{V_{ij}(n)}{V_i(n)} = \frac{\sum_{k=1}^r \xi_k}{r+1} \rightarrow p_{ij}, \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty$$

## EXERCISE

¶ *EXERCISE 1.36.*  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is Markov $(\lambda, P)$ . Show that as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,

$$\frac{V_i(n)}{n} \rightarrow \frac{\mathbb{P}(\tau_i < \infty)}{m_i}, \quad \mathbb{P}\text{-a.s.}$$

where  $m_i = \mathbb{E}_i(\sigma_i)$  is the expected return time to state  $i$ .

## 1.8 Long-run behavior of irreducible chains (II): Convergence to equilibrium

In this section, we shall investigate the limiting behaviour of the  $n$ -step transition probabilities  $p_{ij}^{(n)}$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  for an Markov chain.

- (i) If  $i$  doesn't lead to  $j$ ,  $p_{ij}^{(n)} = 0$  for all  $n$ .
- (ii) If  $j$  is transient, by  $\sum_n p_{ij}^{(n)} \leq \sum_n p_{jj}^{(n)} < \infty$  we have  $p_{ij}^{(n)} \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .
- (iii) If  $i \rightarrow j$  and  $i, j$  is recurrent, then  $i, j$  are communicating. In this case, we can assume  $P$  is irreducible.
- (iv) If  $i \rightarrow j$ ,  $i$  is transient,  $j$  is recurrent. By first decomposition (see [Exercise 1.21](#)) we have

$$p_{ij}^{(n)} = \sum_{k=1}^n f_{ij}^{(k)} p_{jj}^{(n-k)} \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

Then the limiting behaviour of  $p_{ij}^{(n)}$  can be determined by the limiting behaviour of  $p_{jj}^{(n)}$ . (See [Exercise 1.40](#)) When discussing  $p_{jj}^{(n)}$  we can assume  $P$  is irreducible.

Therefore, in this section we always assume  $P$  is irreducible.

### 1.8.1 Periodicity

From ergodic theorem we know that, if  $P$  is irreducible, then for any state  $i$ , we have

$$\frac{V_j(n)}{n} \rightarrow \frac{1}{m_j}, \text{ } \mathbb{P}_i\text{-a.s.}$$

By Lebesgue dominated convergence theorem,

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} p_{ij}^{(k)} \rightarrow \frac{1}{m_j}.$$



It's natural to guess that if  $p_{ij}^{(n)} \rightarrow \frac{1}{m_j}$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . If  $P$  is positive recurrent, that is  $p_{ij}^{(n)} \rightarrow \pi_j$ , where  $\pi$  is the unique invariant distribution for  $P$ . If  $P$  is null recurrent or transient, that is  $p_{ij}^{(n)} \rightarrow 0$ . Let's see some examples first.

¶ **EXAMPLE 1.37.** Let  $I$  be finite. Suppose for some  $i \in I$  that

$$p_{ij}^{(n)} \rightarrow \pi_j \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty \text{ for all } j \in I.$$

Then  $\pi = (\pi_j : j \in I)$  is an invariant distribution.

As we saw in [Example 1.37](#), if the state-space is finite and if for some  $i$  the limit exists for all  $j$ , then it must be an invariant distribution. But, as the following example shows, the limit does not always exist.

¶ **EXAMPLE 1.38.** Consider the two-state chain with transition matrix

$$P = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Then  $P^2 = I$ , so  $P^{2n} = I$  and  $P^{2n+1} = P$  for all  $n$ . Thus  $p_{ij}^{(n)}$  fails to converge for all  $i, j$ .

The behaviour of the chain in [Example 1.38](#) is connected with its *periodicity*.

**Definition 1.6.** An integer  $d$  is called the **period** of state  $i$  if  $d$  is the largest common divisor of  $\{n \geq 0 : p_{ii}^{(n)} > 0\}$ . A state  $i$  is called **aperiodic** if  $i$  has period one.

**Lemma 1.36.** If state  $i$  has period  $d$ , then  $p_{ii}^{(nd)} > 0$  for sufficiently large  $n$ , i.e., there is  $N_i \in \mathbb{N}_+$ , for any  $n \geq N_i$ ,  $p_{ii}^{(nd)} > 0$ .

*Proof.* Note that  $d$  is the largest common divisor of  $\{n \geq 0 : p_{ii}^{(n)} > 0\}$ , so there exists some  $n_1, \dots, n_k$  such that  $p_{ii}^{(n_k)} > 0$ , and  $d = (n_1, \dots, n_k)$ . By Bezout identity, there exist some  $a, \dots, a_k \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that

$$a_1 \frac{n_1}{d} + \dots + a_k \frac{n_k}{d} = 1.$$

For any  $n$ , Let  $m(\frac{n_1}{d} + \dots + \frac{n_k}{d}) \leq n < (m+1)(\frac{n_1}{d} + \dots + \frac{n_k}{d})$ , then  $\delta := n - m(\frac{n_1}{d} + \dots + \frac{n_k}{d}) < (\frac{n_1}{d} + \dots + \frac{n_k}{d})$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned} n &= m(\frac{n_1}{d} + \dots + \frac{n_k}{d}) + \delta(a_1 \frac{n_1}{d} + \dots + a_k \frac{n_k}{d}) \\ &= (m + a_1 \delta) \frac{n_1}{d} + \dots + (m + a_k \delta) \frac{n_k}{d} \\ &=: b_1 \frac{n_1}{d} + \dots + b_k \frac{n_k}{d}. \end{aligned}$$

where  $b_1 = m + a_1 \delta, \dots, b_k = m + a_k \delta$ . For sufficiently large  $n$ , we can let  $b_1, \dots, b_k \geq 1$ , so

$$p_{ii}^{(nd)} \geq (p_{ii}^{(n_1)})^{b_1} \dots (p_{ii}^{(n_k)})^{b_k} > 0. \quad \square$$

**Lemma 1.37.** *periodicity is a class property, i.e.,  $i$  communicates with  $j$ , then they have the same period.*

*Proof.* Assume  $i$  has period  $d_i$  and  $j$  has period  $d_j$ . Since  $i$  communicates with  $j$ , there exists some positive integers  $m$  and  $l$  such that  $p_{ij}^{(m)} > 0$  and  $p_{ji}^{(l)} > 0$ . So when  $n$  is sufficiently large,

$$p_{ii}^{(m+nd_j+l)} \geq p_{ij}^{(m)} p_{jj}^{(nd)} p_{ji}^{(l)} > 0.$$

Then we have  $d_i \mid d_j$ . Samely,  $d_j \mid d_i$ , So  $d_i = d_j$ .  $\square$

Therefore, we can say a irreducible Markov chain has period  $d$ , that means every state has period  $d$ .

**Theorem 1.38.** *Let  $P$  be irreducible has period  $d$ . There is a partition*

$$I = D_0 \cup D_1 \cup \dots \cup D_{d-1} \quad (1.17)$$

*such that (setting  $D_{nd+r} = D_r$ )*

- (i)  $p_{ij}^{(n)} > 0$  only if  $i \in D_r$  and  $j \in D_{r+n}$  for some  $r$ .
- (ii) For any  $r = 0, \dots, d-1$  and  $i, j \in D_r$ ,  $p_{ij}^{(nd)} > 0$  for all sufficiently large  $n$ , i.e., there is  $N_{ij} \in \mathbb{N}_+$  such that for any  $n \geq N_{ij}$  we have  $p_{ij}^{(nd)} > 0$ .

**Remark.** From (i) we can see that  $P$  can write as block diagonal matrix as the following form:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & P|_{D_0, D_1} & & & \\ 0 & 0 & P|_{D_1, D_2} & & \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \\ 0 & 0 & & \ddots & P|_{D_{d-2}, D_{d-1}} \\ P|_{D_{d-1}, D_0} & 0 & \dots & & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

From (ii), We can see that  $D_0, \dots, D_{d-1}$  is all the communicating class of  $P^d$ , also  $P^d$  can write as block diagonal matrix as the following form:

$$\begin{bmatrix} P^d|_{D_0} & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & P^d|_{D_{d-1}} \end{bmatrix}$$

*Proof.* Take any state  $k$  fixed, and for any  $r = 0, \dots, d-1$ ,

$$D_r := \{j : \exists n \text{ s.t. } p_{kj}^{(nd+r)} > 0\}.$$

Obviously,  $\cup_{r=0}^{d-1} D_r = I$ . Let  $0 \leq r_1 \neq r_2 \leq d-1$ , We need to show that  $D_{r_1} \cap D_{r_2} = \emptyset$ . If not, assume  $p_{kj}^{(n_1d+r_1)} > 0$  and  $p_{kj}^{(n_2d+r_2)} > 0$ . Since  $P$  is irreducible, there is some integer  $l$  such that  $p_{jk}^{(l)} > 0$ . Then  $p_{kk}^{(n_1d+r_1+l)} > 0$  and  $p_{kk}^{(n_2d+r_2+l)} > 0$ . So  $d \mid r_1 + l$  and  $d \mid r_2 + l$ , then  $d \mid (r_1 - r_2)$ ,  $r_1 = r_2$ . We arrive at a contradiction. Hence we have a partition.

Let  $i \in D_r$  and  $p_{ij}^{(n)} > 0$ , we show that  $j \in D_{r+n}$ . Since  $i \in D_r$ , there exists  $n_1$  such that  $p_{kj}^{(n_1d+r)} > 0$ , so  $p_{kj}^{(n_1d+r+n)} \geq p_{ki}^{(n_1d+r)} p_{ij}^{(n)} > 0$ . Hence we have  $j \in D_{r+n}$ .

Let  $i, j \in D_r$ , we prove that  $p_{ij}^{(nd)} > 0$  for sufficiently large  $n$ . Assume  $p_{ik}^{(l)} > 0$ ,  $p_{ki}^{(n_1d+r)} > 0$  and  $p_{kj}^{(n_2d+r)} > 0$ . Then  $p_{ii}^{(n_1d+r+l)} > 0$ . We have  $d \mid r+l$  because  $i$  has period  $d$ . Then for sufficiently large  $n$ ,  $p_{ij}^{(l+nd+n_2d+r)} \geq p_{ik}^{(l)} p_{kk}^{(nd)} p_{kj}^{(n_2d+r)} > 0$ . Let  $r+l+n_2d = n_3d$ , that is  $p_{ij}^{(nd+n_3d)} > 0$ . So  $p_{ij}^{(nd)} > 0$  for sufficiently large  $n$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 1.38** 表明从某一块区域中的任意状态出发, 走一步必然到下一块区域中. 应该强调, 仅有 (i) 成立, 而 (ii) 不成立不能保证  $d$  是马氏链的周期.

¶ **EXAMPLE 1.39.** Figure 1.6 中马氏链周期为 6, 但是其中的分块也满足 Theorem 1.38 的 (i).

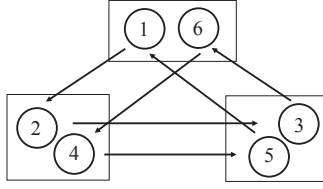


Figure 1.6: Counterexample

### 1.8.2 Limiting behavior of $p_{ij}^{(n)}$

Here is the main result of this section. The method of proof, by *coupling* two Markov chains, is ingenious.

**Theorem 1.39 (Convergence to equilibrium).** *Let  $P$  be irreducible, positive recurrent and aperiodic,  $\pi$  is the unique invariant distribution. Then for all  $i, j \in I$ ,*

$$p_{ij}^{(n)} \rightarrow \pi_j, \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty$$

*In fact, suppose that  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is Markov  $(\lambda, P)$ , where  $\lambda$  is any initial distribution. Then  $\mathbb{P}_{X_n} \rightarrow \pi$  in total variance distance  $d_{TV}$ , i.e.,*

$$\sum_{j \in I} |\mathbb{P}(X_n = j) - \pi_j| \rightarrow 0, \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

*Proof.* We use a coupling argument. Let  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be Markov  $(\pi, P)$  and independent of  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$ . Fix a reference state  $b$  and set

$$\tau = \inf \{n \geq 1 : X_n = Y_n = b\}.$$

**Step 1.** We show  $\mathbb{P}(T < \infty) = 1$ . The process  $W_n = (X_n, Y_n)$  is a Markov chain on  $I \times I$  with transition probabilities

$$\tilde{p}_{(i,k)(j,l)} = p_{ij}p_{kl}$$

and initial distribution

$$\mu_{(i,k)} = \lambda_i \pi_k$$

since  $P$  is aperiodic, for all states  $i, j, k, l$  we have

$$\tilde{p}_{(i,k)(j,l)}^{(n)} = p_{ij}^{(n)} p_{kl}^{(n)} > 0$$

for all sufficiently large  $n$ ; so  $P$  is irreducible. Also,  $P$  has an invariant distribution given by

$$\tilde{\pi}_{(i,k)} = \pi_i \pi_k.$$

So  $\tilde{P}$  is positive recurrent. But  $\tau$  is the first passage time of  $W_n$  to  $(b, b)$  so  $\mathbb{P}(T < \infty) = 1$ .

**Step 2.** Set

$$Z_n = \begin{cases} X_n, & \text{if } n \leq \tau. \\ Y_n, & \text{if } n > \tau. \end{cases}$$

The diagram below illustrates the idea. It's easy to show that  $(Z_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is Markov  $(\lambda, P)$ .

**Step 3.** We have

$$\mathbb{P}(Z_n = j) = \mathbb{P}(X_n = j \text{ and } n < T) + \mathbb{P}(Y_n = j \text{ and } n \geq T).$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{j \in I} |\mathbb{P}(X_n = j) - \pi_j| &= \sum_{j \in I} |\mathbb{P}(Z_n = j) - \mathbb{P}(Y_n = j)| \\ &= \sum_{j \in I} |\mathbb{P}(X_n = j, n \leq \tau) - \mathbb{P}(Y_n = j, n \leq \tau)| \\ &\leq \sum_{j \in I} \mathbb{P}(X_n = j, n \leq \tau) + \mathbb{P}(Y_n = j, n \leq \tau) \\ &= 2\mathbb{P}(n \leq \tau). \end{aligned}$$

and  $\mathbb{P}(n \leq \tau) \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . □

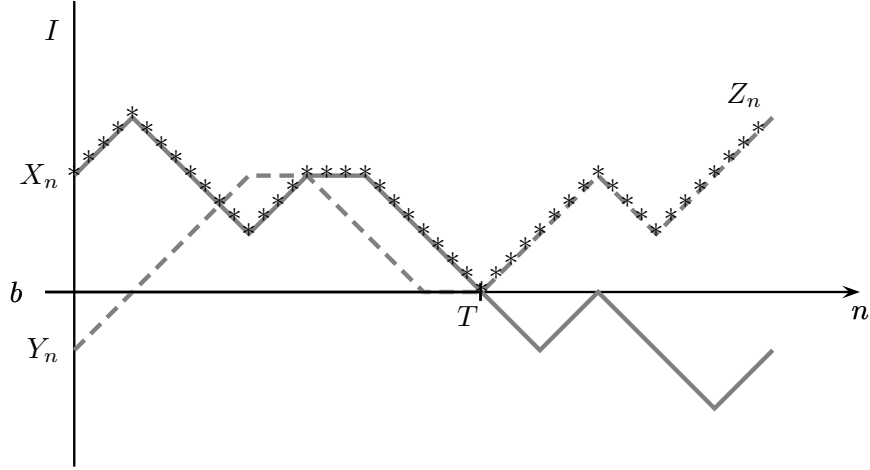


Figure 1.7:  $X_n$ ,  $Y_n$  and  $Z_n$

To understand this proof one should see what goes wrong when  $P$  is not aperiodic. Consider the two-state chain of [Example 1.38](#) which has  $(1/2, 1/2)$  as its unique invariant distribution.  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  We start  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  from 0 and  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  with equal probability from 0 or 1. However, if  $Y_0 = 1$ , then, because of periodicity,  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  and  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  will never meet, and the proof fails.

**Theorem 1.40.** *Let  $P$  be irreducible, aperiodic and null recurrent. Then for all  $i, j \in I$ ,*

$$p_{ij}^{(n)} \rightarrow 0, \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

*In fact, for any initial distribution  $\lambda$ , suppose that  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is Markov  $(\lambda, P)$ , then*

$$\mathbb{P}(X_n = j) \rightarrow 0, \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

*Proof.* Return to the coupling argument used in [Theorem 1.39](#), only now let  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be Markov  $(\mu, P)$ , where  $\mu$  is to be chosen later. Set  $W_n = (X_n, Y_n)$ . As before, aperiodicity of  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  ensures irreducibility of  $(W_n)_{n \geq 0}$ .

If  $(W_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is transient then, on taking  $\mu = \lambda$ , we obtain

$$\mathbb{P}(X_n = j)^2 = \mathbb{P}(W_n = (j, j)) \rightarrow 0$$

as required.

Now assume  $(W_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is recurrent. Using the same argument in [Theorem 1.39](#), we have  $\mathbb{P}(\tau < \infty) = 1$ , we have that

$$|\mathbb{P}(X_n = j) - \mathbb{P}(Y_n = j)| \rightarrow 0.$$

We exploit this convergence by taking  $\mu = \lambda P^k$  for  $k \in \mathbb{N}_+$  so that

$$|\mathbb{P}(X_n = j) - \mathbb{P}(X_{n+k} = j)| \rightarrow 0. \quad (1.18)$$

( $\star$ ) If we can prove that for any  $\epsilon > 0$ , there is some  $K = K_\epsilon$  such that

$$\min_{0 \leq k \leq K} \mathbb{P}(X_{n+k} = j) < \epsilon, \quad \text{for any } n \in \mathbb{N}_+.$$

Then from (1.18) we know for the  $\epsilon$  given previously, there is  $N = N_\epsilon > 0$  such that for any  $n \geq N$ , there holds

$$\max_{0 \leq k \leq K} |\mathbb{P}(X_n = j) - \mathbb{P}(X_{n+k} = j)| < \epsilon. \quad (1.19)$$

We can see that  $\mathbb{P}(X_n = j) < 2\epsilon$  for any  $n \geq N$ . So,  $\mathbb{P}(X_n = j) \rightarrow 0$ .

If ( $\star$ ) doesn't hold, there is some  $\epsilon_0 > 0$ , for any positive integer  $K$ , there exist a  $m = m(K)$  such that

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{m+k} = j) \geq \epsilon_0, \quad k = 0, 1, \dots, K.$$

Note that for any  $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, K$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(X_{m+k} = j) \mathbb{P}_j(\sigma_j > K - k) \\ &= \mathbb{P}(\sup\{n : X_n = j, n \leq m + K\} = m + k), \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\sum_{k=0}^K \mathbb{P}(\sup\{n : X_n = j, n \leq m + K\} = m + k) = 1$$

So we have

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &= \sum_{k=0}^K \mathbb{P}(X_{m+k} = j) \mathbb{P}_j(\sigma_j > K - k) \\ &\geq \epsilon_0 \sum_{k=0}^K \mathbb{P}_j(\sigma_j > K - k) = \epsilon_0 \sum_{k=0}^K \mathbb{P}_j(\sigma_j > k) . \end{aligned}$$

Since  $K$  is arbitrary, we have  $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_j(\sigma_j > k) < \infty$ . But  $P$  is null recurrent, we have

$$\mathbb{E}_j(\sigma_j) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_j(\sigma_j > k) = \infty .$$

This is a contradiction. □

Combine [Theorem 1.39](#) and [Theorem 1.40](#), we have

**Theorem 1.41.** *Let  $P$  be irreducible, aperiodic. Then for all  $i, j \in I$ ,*

$$p_{ij}^{(n)} \rightarrow \frac{1}{m_j}, \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty . \quad (1.20)$$

*In fact, for any initial distribution  $\lambda$ , suppose that  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is Markov  $(\lambda, P)$ , then*

$$\mathbb{P}(X_n = j) \rightarrow \frac{1}{m_j}, \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty .$$

We move on now to the cases that were excluded in the last theorem, where  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is periodic or transient or null recurrent. Here is a complete description of limiting behaviour for irreducible chains. This generalizes [Theorem 1.39](#) in two respects since we require neither aperiodicity nor the existence of an invariant distribution.

**Theorem 1.42.** *Let  $P$  be irreducible of period  $d$  and let  $D_0, D_1, \dots, D_{d-1}$  be the partition obtained in [Theorem 1.38](#). For any  $i \in D_0$  and  $r = 0, 1, \dots, d-1$ , and  $j \in D_r$  we have*

$$p_{ij}^{(nd+r)} \rightarrow \frac{d}{m_j} \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty .$$



In fact, Let  $\lambda$  be a distribution with  $\sum_{i \in D_0} \lambda_i = 1$ . Suppose that  $(X_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is Markov( $\lambda, P$ ). Then for  $j \in D_r$

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{nd+r} = j) \rightarrow \frac{d}{m_j}, \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty$$

*Proof.* We reduce to the aperiodic case. Set  $\nu = \lambda P^r$ , by [Theorem 1.38](#) we have

$$\sum_{i \in C_r} \nu_i = 1.$$

Set  $Y_n = X_{nd+r}$ , then  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is Markov  $(\nu, P^d)$  and, by [Theorem 1.38](#),  $P^d$  is irreducible and aperiodic on  $C_r$ . For  $j \in C_r$  the expected return time of  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  to  $j$  is  $m_j/d$ . By [Theorem 1.41](#), in the aperiodic case, we have

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{nd+r} = j) = \mathbb{P}(Y_n = j) \rightarrow \frac{d}{m_j} \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty$$

so the theorem holds in general.  $\square$

**Corollary 1.43.**  *$P$  is irreducible, then*

$$\limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} p_{ij}^{(n)} = \frac{d}{m_j}, \quad (1.21)$$

where  $d$  is the period of  $P$ .

## EXERCISE

¶ *EXERCISE 1.40.* Assume state  $i, j \in I$  such that  $i$  is transient and  $j$  is recurrent.

(i)  $j$  is aperiodic, show that

$$p_{ij}^{(n)} \rightarrow \frac{\rho_{ij}}{m_j}, \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

(ii)  $j$  has period  $d$ , show that

$$p_{ij}^{(nd+r)} \rightarrow \frac{d}{m_j} \left[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} f_{ij}^{(kd+r)} \right] \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty$$

for any  $r = 0, 1, \dots, d-1$ , where  $f_{ij}^{(n)} = \mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_j = n)$ .

*Hint:* Note that in [Exercise 1.21](#) we proved that

$$p_{ij}^{(n)} = \sum_{k=1}^n f_{ij}^{(k)} p_{jj}^{(n-k)} \quad \text{for } n \geq 1$$

When  $j$  is aperiodic, for fixed  $k$  we have  $p_{jj}^{(n-k)} \rightarrow 1/m_j$ . Then use Lebesgue dominated convergence theorem: Let  $\mu$  be a finite measure on  $\mathbb{N}$  such that  $\mu(k) = f_{ij}^{(k)}$ . For any  $n$ , let  $g_n(k) = p_{jj}^{(n-k)}$  for  $k \leq n$  and  $= 0$  for  $k > n$ ,  $g(k) = 1/m_j$  is constant function, thus we have  $g_n \rightarrow g$  a.e. Note that  $g_n \leq 1$ , by Lebesgue dominated convergence theorem:

$$p_{ij}^{(n)} = \sum_{k=1}^n f_{ij}^{(k)} p_{jj}^{(n-k)} = \int_{\mathbb{N}} g_n d\mu \rightarrow \int_{\mathbb{N}} g d\mu = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} f_{ij}^{(k)} \frac{1}{m_j} = \frac{\rho_{ij}}{m_j}.$$

## Chapter 2

# Continuous-time Markov chains

### 2.1 Right Continuous random processes

Let  $I$  be a countable set with discrete topology, and  $\mathcal{B}(I)$  is the Borel algebra on  $I$ . A random vectors

$$X : (\Omega, \mathcal{F}) \rightarrow (I^{[0, \infty)}, \mathcal{B}(I)^{[0, \infty)}) ; \omega \mapsto (X_t(\omega))_{t \geq 0}$$

is called a **continuous-time random process with values in  $I$** . Equivalently, a continuous-time random process is a family of random variables  $X_t : \Omega \rightarrow I$  for all  $t \geq 0$ . Sometimes, we need

$$X : (\Omega \times [0, \infty), \mathcal{F} \times \mathcal{B}[0, \infty)) \rightarrow \mathbb{R} ; (\omega, t) \mapsto X_t(\omega)$$

is measurable.

We are going to consider ways in which we might specify the probabilistic behaviour (or law ) of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$ . These should enable us to find, at least in principle, any probability connected with the process, such as  $\mathbb{P}(X_t = i \text{ for some } t)$ . There are subtleties in this problem not present in

the discrete-time case. They arise because, for a countable disjoint union

$$\mathbb{P} \left( \bigcup_n A_n \right) = \sum_n \mathbb{P}(A_n) .$$

whereas for an uncountable union  $\cup_{t \geq 0} A_t$  there is no such rule. But

$$\{X_t = i \text{ for some } t \in [0, \infty)\} = \bigcup_{t \geq 0} \{X_t = i\}$$

To avoid these subtleties as far as possible we shall restrict our attention to processes  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  which are *right-continuous*.

**Definition 2.1.** A continuous-time random process  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  with values in  $I$  is called **right-continuous** if for any fixed  $\omega \in \Omega$ ,  $[0, \infty) \rightarrow I; t \mapsto X_t(\omega)$  is right-continuous, where  $I$  equipped with discrete topology.

Clearly,  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is right-continuous means that, for each  $\omega \in \Omega$  and  $t \geq 0$ , there exists  $\delta > 0$ , depending on  $\omega$  and  $t$ , such that

$$X_s(\omega) = X_t(\omega), \quad \text{for all } s \in [t, t + \delta]. \quad (2.1)$$

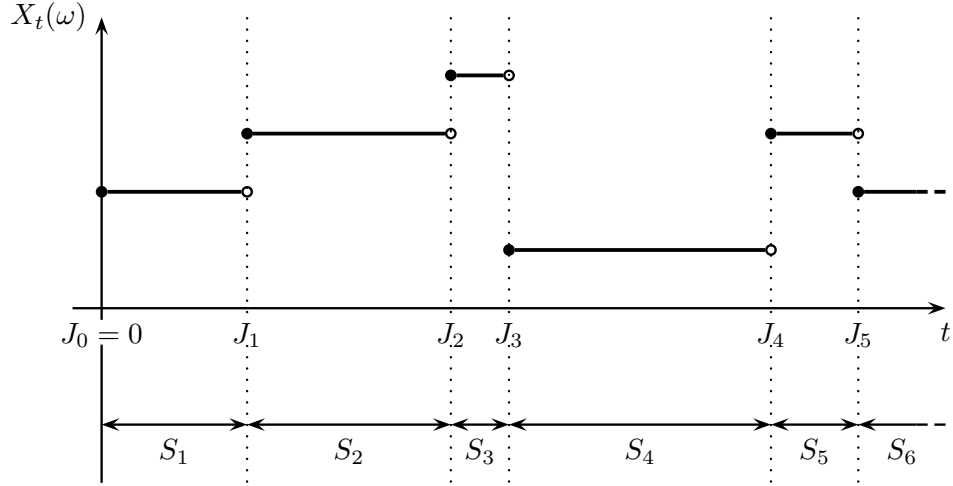
For example, we can now deduce that

$$\{X_t = i \text{ for some } t \in [0, \infty)\} = \bigcup_{t \geq 0} \{X_t = i\} = \bigcup_{r \in \mathbb{Q}_+} \{X_r = i\} .$$

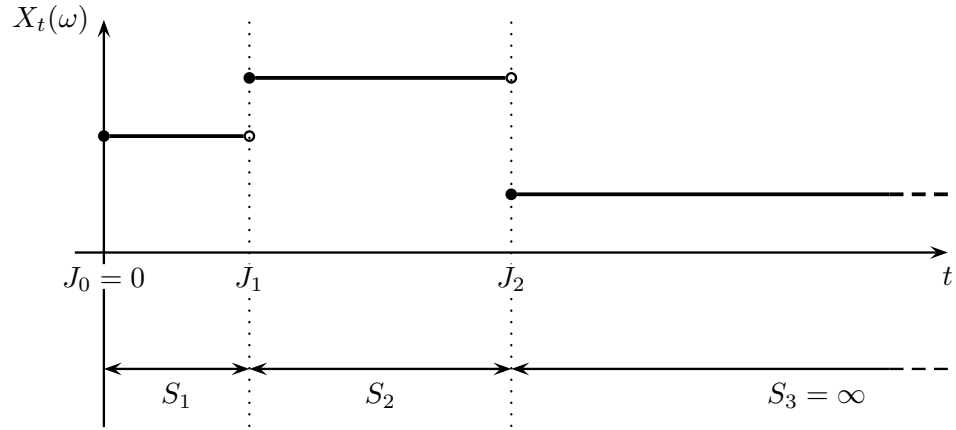
and following this we can compute the probability of  $\{X_t = i \text{ for some } t \in [0, \infty)\}$ .

**Three possibilities for the sorts of path** Every path  $t \mapsto X_t(\omega)$  of a right-continuous process must remain constant for a while in each new state, so there are three possibilities for the sorts of path we get.

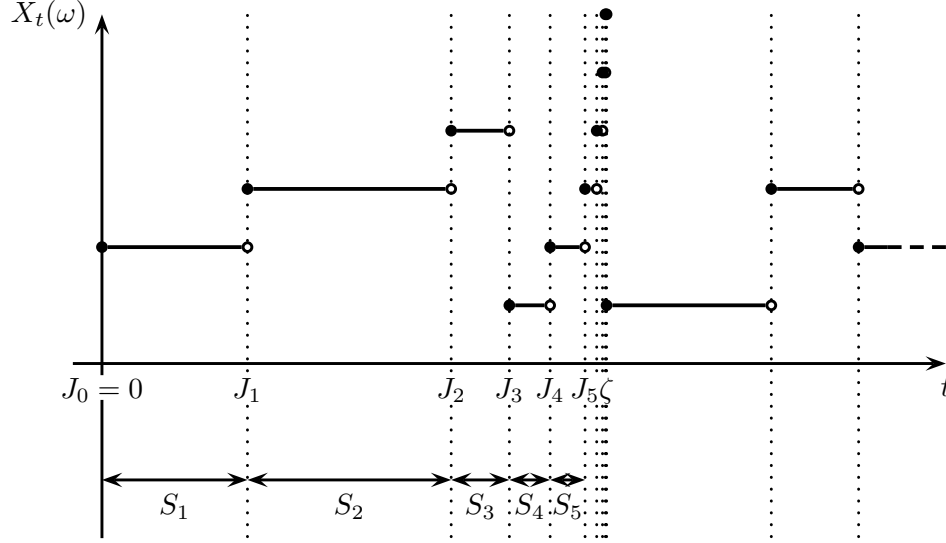
In the first case the path makes infinitely many jumps, but only finitely many in any interval  $[0, t]$ .



The second case is where the path makes finitely many jumps and then becomes stuck in some state forever:



In the third case the process makes infinitely many jumps in a finite interval; this is illustrated below. In this case, after the explosion time  $\zeta$  the process starts up again; it may explode again, maybe infinitely often, or it may not.



**Jump times, holding times** We call  $J_0, J_1, \dots$  the *jump times* of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  and  $S_1, S_2, \dots$  the *holding times*. They are obtained from  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  by

$$J_0 = 0, \quad J_{n+1} = \inf \{t \geq J_n : X_t \neq X_{J_n}\}$$

for  $n = 0, 1, \dots$ , where  $\inf \emptyset = \infty$ , and, for  $n = 1, 2, \dots$

$$S_n = \begin{cases} J_n - J_{n-1} & \text{if } J_{n-1} < \infty \\ \infty & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Note that right-continuity forces  $S_n > 0$  for all  $n$ . If  $J_{n+1} = \infty$  for some  $n$ , we define  $X_\infty = X_{J_n}$ , the final value, otherwise  $X_\infty$  is undefined.

**Explosion time, embedded chain** The *(first) explosion time*  $\zeta$  is defined by

$$\zeta = \sup_n J_n = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} S_n$$

The discrete-time process  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  given by  $Y_n = X_{J_n}$  is called the *jump process* of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$ , or the *embedded chain (jump chain)* if it is a discrete-

time Markov chain. This is simply the sequence of values taken by  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  up to explosion.

**Minimal process** We shall not consider what happens to a process after explosion. So it is convenient to adjoin to  $I$  a new state,  $\infty$  (or  $\partial$ ) say, and require that  $X_t = \infty$  (or  $X_t = \partial$ ) if  $t \geq \zeta$ . Any process satisfying this requirement is called *minimal*. The terminology “minimal” does not refer to the state of the process but to the interval of time over which the process is active.

Note that a minimal process may be reconstructed from its holding times and jump process. Thus by specifying the joint distribution of  $S_1, S_2, \dots$  and  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  we have another “countable” specification of the probabilistic behaviour of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$ . For example,

$$\{X_t = i \text{ for some } t \in [0, \infty)\} = \{Y_n = i \text{ for some } n \in \mathbb{N}\} .$$

Consider now the method of describing a minimal right-cont-continuous process  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  via its jump process  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  and holding times  $(S_n)_{n \geq 1}$ . Let us take

$$\mathcal{F} = \sigma(X_t : t \geq 0) \text{ and } \mathcal{G} = \sigma((Y_n)_{n \geq 0}, (S_n)_{n \geq 1}) .$$

Firstly, for all  $i \in I$

$$\{X_t = i\} = \bigcup_{n \geq 0} \{Y_n = i\} \cap \{J_n \leq t < J_{n+1}\} \in \mathcal{G} ,$$

which deduces that  $\mathcal{F} \subset \mathcal{G}$ . Intuitively,  $\mathcal{G} \subset \mathcal{F}$ , but there’s a little bit of troubles to prove it rigorously.

Denote by  $\mathcal{F}_t$  the  $\sigma$ -algebra generated by  $\{X_s : s \leq t\}$ . We say that a random variable  $T$  with values in  $[0, \infty]$  is a **stopping time of**  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  if  $\{T \leq t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t$  for all  $t \geq 0$ . Note that this certainly implies

$$\{T < t\} = \bigcup_n \left\{ T \leq t - \frac{1}{n} \right\} \in \mathcal{F}_t \quad \text{for all } t \geq 0 .$$

We define for stopping times  $T$ ,

$$\mathcal{F}_T = \{A \in \mathcal{F} : A \cap \{T \leq t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t \text{ for all } t \geq 0\}.$$

This turns out to be the correct way to make precise the notion of sets which “depend only on  $\{X_t : t \leq T\}$ ”, somwtimes we use ‘ $\sigma(\{X_t : t \leq T\})$ ’ to indicate this.

**Lemma 2.1.** *Let  $T$  be a stopping time of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$ . Then  $X_T$  is  $\mathcal{F}_T$ -measurable.*

*Proof.* In order to show  $X_T$  is  $\mathcal{F}_T$ -measurable, it suffices to show that for each  $i \in I$ ,

$$\{X_T = i\} \cap \{T \leq t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t.$$

Clearly,  $\{X_T = i\} \cap \{T < t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t$ , so we need to prove

$$\{X_T = i\} \cap \{T < t\} \in \mathcal{F}_t.$$

Since  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is right-continuous, on  $\{T < t\}$  there exists an (random)  $N \geq 0$  such that, for all  $n \geq N$ , there exists  $k \geq 1$ ,

$$\frac{k-1}{2^n} \leq T < \frac{k}{2^n} < t \text{ and } X_{\frac{k}{2^n}} = X_T.$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} & \{X_T = i\} \cap \{T < t\} \\ &= \bigcup_{N=0}^{\infty} \bigcap_{n=N}^{\infty} \bigcup_{k=1}^{[2^n t]} \left\{ X_{\frac{k}{2^n}} = i \right\} \cap \left\{ \frac{k-1}{2^n} \leq T < \frac{k}{2^n} \right\} \in \mathcal{F}_t \end{aligned}$$

so  $X_T$  is  $\mathcal{F}_T$ -measurable. □

**Lemma 2.2.** *Let  $S$  and  $T$  be stopping times of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$ . Then*

$$\{S > T\} \in \mathcal{F}_T, \quad \{S \leq T\} \in \mathcal{F}_T.$$

*Proof.* We have

$$\{S > T\} \cap \{T \leq t\} = \bigcup_{s \in \mathbb{Q}_+, s \leq t} \{T \leq s\} \cap \{S > s\} \in \mathcal{F}_t,$$

so  $\{S > T\} \in \mathcal{F}_T$ , and so  $\{S \leq T\} \in \mathcal{F}_T$ . □



**Lemma 2.3.** *For each  $n \geq 0$ , the jump time  $J_n$  is a stopping time of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$ .*

*Proof.* Obviously,  $J_0 = 0$  is a stopping time. Assume inductively that  $J_n$  is a stopping time. Then for all  $t > 0$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \{J_{n+1} < t\} &= \bigcup_{s \in \mathbb{Q}_+, s \leq t} \{J_n < s\} \cap \{X_s \neq X_{J_n}\} \in \mathcal{F}_t \\ \{J_{n+1} = t\} &= \bigcup_{s \in \mathbb{Q}_+, s \leq t} \{J_n < s\} \bigcap_{\substack{s' \in \mathbb{Q}_+ \\ s \leq s' < t}} \{X_s = X_{J_n}\} \in \mathcal{F}_t. \end{aligned}$$

so  $J_{n+1}$  is a stopping time and the induction proceeds.  $\square$

Now, by the three lemmas above, we  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  and  $(S_n)_{n \geq 1}$  are  $\mathcal{F}$ -measurable. Thus  $\mathcal{G} \subset \mathcal{F}$ . Therefore we get  $\mathcal{F} = \mathcal{G}$ , i.e.,

$$\sigma(X_t : t \geq 0) = \sigma((Y_n)_{n \geq 0}, (S_n)_{n \geq 1}). \quad (2.2)$$

## 2.2 Poisson processes

Poisson processes are some of the simplest examples of continuous-time Markov chains. We shall also see that they may serve as *building blocks* for the most general continuous-time Markov chain. Moreover, a Poisson process is the natural probabilistic model for any uncoordinated stream of discrete events in continuous time. So we shall study Poisson processes first, both as a gentle warm-up for the general theory and because they are useful in themselves. We shall begin with a definition in terms of jump chain and holding times.

**Definition 2.2.** A right-continuous process  $(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$  with values in  $\{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$  is a **Poisson process of rate  $\lambda$** , where  $\lambda \in (0, \infty)$ , if its holding times  $S_1, S_2, \dots$  are independent exponential random variables of parameter  $\lambda$  and its jump chain is given by  $Y_n = n$ .

**Remark.** Given the distribution of the jump times and jump chain, the law of  $(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is uniquely determined.

Here is the diagram of the Poisson process,

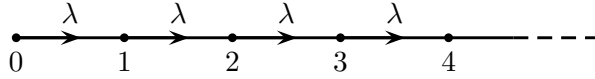


Figure 2.1: Poisson process of rate  $\lambda$

and the associated Q-matrix is given by

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} -\lambda & \lambda & & & \\ & -\lambda & \lambda & & \\ & & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & & & \ddots & \ddots \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.3)$$

Using the strong law of large numbers, we have  $\mathbb{P}(J_n \rightarrow \infty) = 1$ , so there is no explosion in Poisson process.

Why is the process defined above called “Poisson”?

**Theorem 2.4.** *For each  $t > 0$ ,  $N_t$  has a  $\text{Poisson}(\lambda t)$  distribution.*

*Proof.* For any  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}(N_t = n) = \mathbb{P}(J_n \leq t < J_{n+1}) = \int_0^t f_{J_n}(s) \mathbb{P}(S_{n+1} > t - s) ds$$

Note that  $J_n = S_1 + \cdots + S_n$  has a  $\text{gamma}(n, \lambda)$  distribution, that is

$$f_{J_n}(s) = \lambda e^{-\lambda s} \cdot \frac{(\lambda s)^{n-1}}{(n-1)!} 1_{\{s>0\}}.$$

So we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}(N(t) = n) &= \int_0^t \lambda e^{-\lambda s} \frac{(\lambda s)^{n-1}}{(n-1)!} \cdot e^{-\lambda(t-s)} ds \\ &= \frac{\lambda^n}{(n-1)!} e^{-\lambda t} \int_0^t s^{n-1} ds = e^{-\lambda t} \frac{(\lambda t)^n}{n!}, \end{aligned}$$

which proves the desired result.  $\square$

**Construct a Poisson process** A simple way to construct a Poisson process of rate  $\lambda$  is to take a sequence  $S_1, S_2, \dots$  of independent exponential random Variables of parameter  $\lambda$ , to set  $J_0 = 0$ ,  $J_n = S_1 + \cdots + S_n$ , then set

$$N_t = n \quad \text{if} \quad J_n \leq t < J_{n+1} \quad (2.4)$$

or equivalently

$$N_t = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 1_{\{J_n \leq t\}} \quad \text{for all } t \geq 0. \quad (2.5)$$

The following diagram illustrates a typical path, and it's easy to check that  $\{J_n\}$  is exactly the jump times of the right-continuous process  $(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$ .

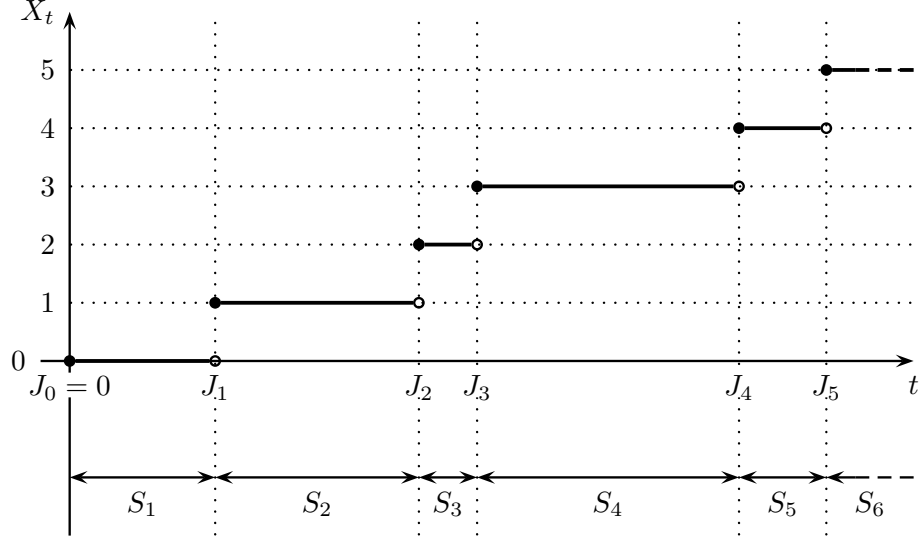


Figure 2.2: Construct a Poisson process

**Markov property** We now show how the memoryless property of the exponential holding times, leads to a memoryless property of the Poisson process.

**Theorem 2.5 (Markov property).** *Let  $(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be a Poisson process of rate  $\lambda$ . Then, for any  $s > 0$ ,  $(N_{s+t} - N_s)_{t \geq 0}$  is also a Poisson process of rate  $\lambda$ , independent of  $\{N_t : t \leq s\}$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\tilde{N}_t = N_{t+s} - N_s$  for all  $t \geq 0$ . Clearly,  $(\tilde{N}_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is a integer valued, increasing, right-continuous process starting at 0. Its jump times are given by  $\tilde{J}_0 = 0$  and

$$\tilde{J}_n = J_{N(s)+1} - s \quad \text{for } n \geq 1.$$

Hence the holding times are

$$\tilde{S}_1 = J_{N(s)+1} - s \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{S}_n = S_{N(s)+n} \quad \text{for } n \geq 2.$$

It suffices to show that  $\{\tilde{S}_n\}$  is sequence of i.i.d r.v.'s with exponential distribution of parameter  $\lambda$ , and independent of  $(N_t)_{0 \leq t \leq s}$ .

For any real numbers  $t_1, \dots, t_n \in (0, \infty)$ ,  $0 \leq s_1 < \dots < s_m \leq s$ , and non-negative integers  $0 \leq k_1 \leq \dots \leq k_{m-1} < k_m = k$ ,<sup>•</sup>

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(\tilde{S}_1 > t_1, \dots, \tilde{S}_n > t_n; N(s) = k, N(s_1) = k_1, \dots, N(s_m) = k_m) \\ &= \mathbb{P}(J_{k+1} - s > t_1, S_{k+i} > t_i, 2 \leq i \leq n; J_k \leq s_m, J_{k_j} \leq s_j < J_{k_j+1}, 1 \leq j < m), \end{aligned}$$

we denote by  $A$  the event  $\{J_{k_j} \leq s_j < J_{k_j+1}, 1 \leq j < m\}$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(\tilde{S}_1 > t_1, \dots, \tilde{S}_n > t_n; N(s) = k, N(s_1) = k_1, \dots, N(s_m) = k_m) \\ &= e^{-\lambda(t_2 + \dots + t_n)} \times \mathbb{P}(\{S_{k+1} > t_1 + s - J_k\} \cap \{J_k \leq s_m\} \cap A), \end{aligned}$$

and let  $A' = \{x_1 + \dots + x_{k_j} \leq s_j < x_1 + \dots + x_{k_j+1}, 1 \leq j < m\}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(\{S_{k+1} > t_1 + s - J_k\} \cap \{J_k \leq s_m\} \cap A) \\ &= \int_{x_1, \dots, x_m > 0} \mathbb{P}(S_{k+1} > t_1 + s - \sum x_j) 1_{\{\sum x_j \leq s_m\}} 1_{A'} dx_1 \dots dx_m \end{aligned}$$

by memoryless property of the exponential distributions,

$$\begin{aligned} &= \int_{x_1, \dots, x_m > 0} \mathbb{P}(S_{k+1} > t_1) \mathbb{P}(S_{k+1} > s - \sum x_j) 1_{\{\sum x_j \leq s_m\}} 1_{A'} dx_1 \dots dx_m \\ &= e^{-\lambda t_1} \int_{x_1, \dots, x_m > 0} \mathbb{P}(S_{k+1} > s - \sum x_j) 1_{\{\sum x_j \leq s_m\}} 1_{A'} dx_1 \dots dx_m \\ &= e^{-\lambda t_1} \mathbb{P}(\{S_{k+1} > s - J_k\} \cap \{J_k \leq s_m\} \cap A) \\ &= e^{-\lambda t_1} \mathbb{P}(\{J_k \leq s_m < s < J_{k+1}\} \cap A). \end{aligned}$$

Thus we get

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(\tilde{S}_1 > t_1, \dots, \tilde{S}_n > t_n; N(s) = k, N(s_1) = k_1, \dots, N(s_m) = k_m) \\ &= e^{-\lambda(t_1 + t_2 + \dots + t_n)} \times \mathbb{P}(\{J_k \leq s_m \leq s < J_{k+1}\} \cap A), \\ &= e^{-\lambda(t_1 + t_2 + \dots + t_n)} \times \mathbb{P}(N(s) = k, N(s_1) = k_1, \dots, N(s_m) = k_m). \end{aligned}$$

---

<sup>•</sup>We let  $k_{m-1} < k_m = k$ , in order that we can write  $\{N(s) = k, N(s_1) = k_1, \dots, N(s_m) = k_m\}$  as  $\{J_{k+1} > s\} \cap \{J_{k_j} \leq s_j < J_{k_j+1}, 1 \leq j < m\}$  and the second event is in  $\sigma(S_1, \dots, S_k)$ .

Thus  $\{\tilde{S}_n\}$  is sequence of i.i.d r.v.'s with exponential distribution of parameter  $\lambda$ , and independent of  $\{N_t : t \leq s\}$ .  $\square$

In fact, we shall see in Section ?? by an argument in essentially the same spirit that the result also holds with  $s$  replaced by any stopping time  $T$  of  $(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$ .

**Theorem (Strong Markov property).** *Let  $(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be a Poisson process of rate  $\lambda$  and let  $T$  be a stopping time of  $(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$ . Then, conditional on  $T < \infty$ ,*

$$(N_{T+t} - N_T)_{t \geq 0}$$

*is also a Poisson process of rate  $\lambda$ , independent of  $(N_s)_{s \leq T}$ .*

**Alternative definitions** We come to the key result for the Poisson process, which gives two conditions equivalent to the jump chain/holding time characterization which we took as our original definition. Thus we have three alternative definitions of the same process.

**Theorem 2.6.** *Let  $(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be an increasing, right-continuous, integer-valued process starting from 0. Let  $\lambda \in (0, \infty)$ , then the following three conditions are equivalent:*

- (i) (jump chain/holding time definition) *the holding times  $S_1, S_2, \dots$  of  $(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$  are independent exponential random Variables of parameter  $\lambda$  and the jump chain is given by  $Y_n = n$  for all  $n$ ;*
- (ii) (transition probability definition)  *$(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$  has stationary independent increments and, for each  $t > 0$ ,  $N_t$  has Poisson( $\lambda t$ ) distribution.*
- (iii) (infinitesimal definition)  *$(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$  has independent increments and, as  $h \downarrow 0$ , uniformly in  $t$ ,* <sup>ⓔ</sup>

$$\mathbb{P}(N_{t+h} - N_t = 0) = 1 - \lambda h + o(h), \quad \mathbb{P}(N_{t+h} - N_t = 1) = \lambda h + o(h).$$

---

<sup>ⓔ</sup>Uniformly in  $t$  implies “stationary increments”.

If  $(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$  satisfies any of these conditions then it is called a Poisson process of rate  $\lambda$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). If (i) holds, then, by the Markov property, Theorem 2.5,  $(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$  has stationary independent increments. By Theorem 2.4, we have proved (ii). If (ii) holds, the finite-dimensional distributions of  $(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is uniquely determined, and hence the distribution of jump chain and holding times.

(ii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). If (ii) holds, then for any  $t, h \geq 0$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{t+h} - X_t = 0) = \mathbb{P}(X_h = 0) = e^{-\lambda h} = 1 - \lambda h + o(h)$$

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{t+h} - X_t = 1) = \mathbb{P}(X_h = 1) = \lambda h e^{-\lambda h} = \lambda h + o(h).$$

which implies (iii). To show the other hand, if (iii) holds, then, for  $i \geq 2$ , we have  $\mathbb{P}(X_{t+h} - X_t = i) = o(h)$  as  $h \downarrow 0$ , uniformly in  $t$ . Set  $p_{0j}(t) = \mathbb{P}(X_t = j)$ . Then, for  $j = 1, 2, \dots$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} p_{0j}(t+h) &= \mathbb{P}(X_{t+h} = j) = \sum_{i=0}^j \mathbb{P}(X_{t+h} - X_t = i) \mathbb{P}(X_t = j-i) \\ &= (1 - \lambda h + o(h))p_{0j}(t) + (\lambda h + o(h))p_{0j-1}(t) + o(h), \end{aligned}$$

so

$$\frac{p_{0j}(t+h) - p_{0j}(t)}{h} = -\lambda p_{0j}(t) + \lambda p_{0j-1}(t) + o(1).$$

since this estimate is uniform in  $t$  we can put  $t = s - h$  to obtain for all  $s \geq h$ ,

$$\frac{p_{0j}(s) - p_{0j}(s-h)}{h} = -\lambda p_{0j}(s-h) + \lambda p_{0j-1}(s-h) + o(1)$$

Now let  $h \downarrow 0$  to see that  $p_{0j}(t)$  is first continuous and then differentiable and satisfies the differential equation

$$p'_{0j}(t) = -\lambda p_{0j}(t) + \lambda p_{0j-1}(t).$$

By a simpler argument we also find

$$p'_{00}(t) = -\lambda p_{00}(t).$$

Since  $X_0 = 0$  we have initial conditions

$$p_{00}(0) = 1, \quad p_{0j}(0) = 0 \quad \text{for } j \geq 1.$$

This system of equations has a unique solution given by

$$p_{0j}(t) = e^{-\lambda t} \frac{(\lambda t)^j}{j!} \quad \text{for } j \geq 0.$$

Hence  $N_t$  has a Poisson( $\lambda t$ ) distribution. If  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  satisfies (iii), then  $(X_{s+t} - X_s)_{t \geq 0}$  satisfies (iii), so the above argument shows  $N_{t+s} - N_s$  has a Poisson( $\lambda t$ ) distribution for any  $s$ , which implies (ii).  $\square$

The differential equations which appeared in the proof are really the *forward equations* for the Poisson process. To make this clear, consider the possibility of starting the process from  $i$  at time 0, writing  $\mathbb{P}_i$  as a reminder, and set

$$p_{ij}(t) = \mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j)$$

Then, by spatial homogeneity  $p_{ij}(t) = p_{0j-i}(t)$ , and we could rewrite the differential equations as

$$\begin{aligned} p'_{i0}(t) &= -\lambda p_{i0}(t), & p_{i0}(0) &= \delta_{i0} \\ p'_{ij}(t) &= \lambda p_{i,j-1}(t) - \lambda p_{ij}(t), & p_{ij}(0) &= \delta_{ij} \end{aligned}$$

or, in matrix form, for  $Q$  as above,

$$P'(t) = P(t)Q, \quad P(0) = I.$$

Theorem 2.6 contains a great deal of information about the Poisson process of rate  $\lambda$ . It can be useful when trying to decide whether a given process is a Poisson process as it gives you three alternative conditions to check, and it is likely that one will be easier to check than another. On the other hand it can also be useful when answering a question about a given Poisson process as this question may be more closely connected to one definition than another. For example, you might like to consider the difficulties in approaching the next result using the jump chain/holding time definition.



### 2.2.1 Compound Poisson Processes

Suppose that between 12:00 and 1:00 cars arrive at a fast food restaurant according to a Poisson process  $(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$  with rate  $\lambda$ . Let  $Y_n$  be the number of people in the  $n$ th vehicle which we assume to be i.i.d. and independent of  $(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$ . Having introduced the  $Y_n$ 's, it is natural to consider the sum of the  $Y_n$ 's we have seen up to time  $t$ :

$$S(t) = Y_1 + \cdots + Y_{N(t)} \quad (2.6)$$

where we set  $S(t) = 0$  if  $N(t) = 0$ . In the motivating example,  $S(t)$  gives the number of customers that have arrived up to time  $t$ .

**Lemma 2.7.** *Let  $Y_1, Y_2, \dots$  be i.i.d,  $N$  be a nonnegative integer valued r.v. independent with  $\{Y_n\}$  and, let  $S = Y_1 + \cdots + Y_N$ .*

(i) *If  $\mathbb{E}|Y_1|, \mathbb{E}N < \infty$ , then  $\mathbb{E}S = \mathbb{E}N \cdot \mathbb{E}Y_1$ .*

(ii) *If  $\mathbb{E}Y_i^2, \mathbb{E}N^2 < \infty$ , then  $\text{Var}(S) = \mathbb{E}N \text{Var}(Y_i) + \text{Var}(N)(\mathbb{E}Y_i)^2$ .*

**Remark.** Why is this reasonable? The first of these is natural since if  $N = n$  is nonrandom  $\mathbb{E}S = \mathbb{E}N \cdot \mathbb{E}Y_1$ , (i) then results by setting  $n = \mathbb{E}N$ . This fact is known as Wald's equation. The formula in (ii) is more complicated but it clearly has two of the necessary properties:

If  $N = n$  is nonrandom,  $\text{Var}(S) = n \text{Var}(Y_i)$

If  $Y_i = c$  is nonrandom  $\text{Var}(S) = c^2 \text{Var}(N)$

Combining these two observations, we see that  $\mathbb{E}N \text{Var}(Y_i)$  is the contribution to the variance from the variability of the  $Y_i$ , while  $\text{Var}(N)(\mathbb{E}Y_i)^2$  is the contribution from the variability of  $N$ .

*Proof.* Breaking things down according to the value of  $N$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{E}S &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{E}[S \mid N = n] \mathbb{P}(N = n) \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} n \mathbb{E}Y_i \mathbb{P}(N = n) = \mathbb{E}N \cdot \mathbb{E}Y_i \end{aligned}$$

For the second formula we note that when  $N = n$ ,  $S = X_1 + \cdots + X_n$  has  $\text{Var}(S) = n \text{Var}(Y_i)$  and hence,

$$\mathbb{E}(S^2 | N = n) = n \text{Var}(Y_i) + (n \mathbb{E}Y_i)^2$$

Computing as before we get

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{E}S^2 &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{E}(S^2 | N = n) \cdot P(N = n) \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left\{ n \cdot \text{Var}(Y_i) + n^2 (\mathbb{E}Y_i)^2 \right\} \cdot P(N = n) \\ &= (\mathbb{E}N) \cdot \text{Var}(Y_i) + \mathbb{E}N^2 \cdot (\mathbb{E}Y_i)^2 \end{aligned}$$

To compute the Variance now, we observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Var}(S) &= \mathbb{E}S^2 - (\mathbb{E}S)^2 \\ &= (\mathbb{E}N) \cdot \text{Var}(Y_i) + \mathbb{E}N^2 \cdot (\mathbb{E}Y_i)^2 - (\mathbb{E}N \cdot \mathbb{E}Y_i)^2 \\ &= (\mathbb{E}N) \cdot \text{Var}(Y_i) + \text{Var}(N) \cdot (\mathbb{E}Y_i)^2 \end{aligned}$$

where in the last step we have used  $\text{Var}(N) = \mathbb{E}N^2 - (\mathbb{E}N)^2$  to combine the second and third terms.  $\square$

**Corollary 2.8.** *For any  $t$ ,  $\mathbb{E}S(t) = \lambda t \mathbb{E}Y_1$ , and  $\text{Var} S(t) = \lambda t \mathbb{E}Y_1^2$ .*

*Proof.* Note that in the special case of the Poisson, we have  $\mathbb{E}N(t) = \lambda t$  and  $\text{Var} N(t) = \lambda t$ , so the result follows.  $\square$

### 2.2.2 Thinning

We will use the discrete i.i.d r.v.'s  $\{Y_n\}$ , independent with  $(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$  to split the Poisson process into several, where  $Y_n$  take values in a countable set  $I$ . For given  $j \in I$ , let  $N_j(t)$  be the number of  $n \leq N(t)$  with  $Y_i = j$ , that is

$$N_j(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 1_{\{Y_n=j, n \leq N(t)\}} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 1_{\{J_n \leq t, Y_n=j\}} \quad (2.7)$$

The somewhat remarkable fact is

**Theorem 2.9.**  $(N_j(t))_{t \geq 0}$  is Poisson process with rate  $\lambda p_j$ , where  $p_j = \mathbb{P}(Y_1 = j)$ . Moreover,  $\{N_j(t)\}_{j \in I}$  is independent.

*Proof.* To begin, we suppose that  $P(Y_i = 1) = p$ ,  $P(Y_i = 2) = q$ , and  $p+q = 1$ , so there are only two Poisson processes to consider, namely,  $N_1(t)$  and  $N_2(t)$ . For  $0 = t_0 < t_1 < \dots < t_n < \infty$  and  $k_j, m_j \in \mathbb{N}$  for  $1 \leq j \leq n$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(N_1(t_j) - N_1(t_{j-1}) = k_j, N_2(t_j) - N_2(t_{j-1}) = m_j; 1 \leq j \leq n) \\ &= \mathbb{P}(N(t_j) - N(t_{j-1}) = k_j + m_j; \xi_j = k_j; 1 \leq j \leq n) \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\xi_j := \sum_{s_{j-1} < n \leq s_j} 1_{\{Y_n=1\}}, \text{ and } s_j := \sum_{i=1}^j k_i + m_i.$$

Clearly,  $\{\xi_j\}$  is independent r.v.'s with Binomial( $k_j + m_j, p$ ) distribution, respectively, and independent of  $\{N(t)\}$ . Hence

$$\begin{aligned} &= \mathbb{P}(N(t_j) - N(t_{j-1}) = k_j + m_j; 1 \leq j \leq n) \times \mathbb{P}(\xi_j = k_j; 1 \leq j \leq n) \\ &= \prod_{j=1}^n \mathbb{P}(N(t_j) - N(t_{j-1}) = k_j + m_j) \times \mathbb{P}(\xi_j = k_j) \\ &= \prod_{j=1}^n e^{-\lambda(t_j - t_{j-1})} \frac{[\lambda(t_j - t_{j-1})]^{k_j + m_j}}{(k_j + m_j)!} \times \frac{(k_j + m_j)!}{k_j! m_j!} p^{k_j} q^{m_j}. \\ &= \prod_{j=1}^n e^{-\lambda p(t_j - t_{j-1})} \frac{[\lambda p(t_j - t_{j-1})]^{k_j}}{k_j!} \times \prod_{j=1}^n e^{-\lambda q(t_j - t_{j-1})} \frac{[\lambda q(t_j - t_{j-1})]^{m_j}}{m_j!} \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $N_1(t)$  is Poisson Process with rate  $\lambda p$ ,  $N_2(t)$  is Poisson Process with rate  $\lambda q$ , and  $N_1(t)$ ,  $N_2(t)$  are independent.

Using the same method, one can show that for  $Y_1 = 1, \dots, m$  with probability  $p_1, \dots, p_m$  such that  $p_1 + \dots + p_m = 1$ , the theorem holds. Then the general case follows.  $\square$

**Remark.** We say that  $\{N(t)\}_{t \geq 0}$  is a (*nonhomogeneous*) Poisson process with rate  $\lambda(\cdot)$ , if  $N(0) = 0$ , and

- $N(t)$  has independent increments and,
- $N(t) - N(s)$  is Poisson with mean  $\int_s^t \lambda(r) dr$ .

The thinning results generalizes easily to the nonhomogeneous case : Suppose that in a Poisson process with rate  $\lambda$ , we keep a point that lands at time  $t$  with probability  $p(t)$ . Then the result is a nonhomogeneous Poisson process with rate  $\lambda p(\cdot)$ .

¶ **EXAMPLE 2.1.** Ellen catches fish at times of a Poisson process with rate 2 per hour. 40% of the fish are salmon(鲑鱼), while 60% of the fish are trout(鳟鱼). What is the probability she will catch exactly 1 salmon and 2 trout if she fishes for 2.5 hours?

The total number of fish she catches in 2.5 hours is Poisson with mean 5, so the number of salmon and the number of trout are independent Poissons with means 2 and 3. Thus the probability of interest is

$$e^{-2} \frac{2^1}{1!} \cdot e^{-3} \frac{3^2}{2!}.$$

**Further theory** A Poisson point process on a measure space  $(S, \mathcal{S}, \mu)$  a random mapping  $m : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \{0, 1, \dots\}$  that for each  $\omega$  is a measure on  $\mathcal{S}$  and has the following property : if  $A_1, \dots, A_n$  are disjoint sets with  $\mu(A_i) < \infty$ , then

$$m(A_1), \dots, m(A_n)$$

are independent and have Poisson distributions with means  $\mu(A_i)$ .  $\mu$  is called the *intensity measure* of the process.

If  $\mu(S) < \infty$  then it follows from Theorem 2.9 that we can construct  $m$  by the following recipe: let  $X_1, X_2, \dots$  be i.i.d. elements of  $S$  with distribution  $\nu(\cdot) = \mu(\cdot)/\mu(S)$ , let  $N$  be an independent Poisson random variable with mean  $\mu(S)$ , and let

$$m(A) = \# \{j \leq N : X_j \in A\}, \text{ for all } A \in \mathcal{S}.$$

To extend the construction to infinite measure spaces, e.g. ,  $S = \mathbf{R}^d$ ,  $S =$  Borel sets,  $\mu =$  Lebesgue measure, divide the space up into disjoint sets of finite measure and put independent Poisson processes on each set.

### 2.2.3 Superposition

Taking one Poisson process and splitting it into two or more by using an i.i.d. sequence  $\{Y_n\}$  is called thinning. Going in the other direction and adding up a lot of independent processes is called *superposition*. Since a Poisson process can be split into independent Poisson processes, it should not be too surprising that when the independent Poisson processes are put together, the sum is Poisson with a rate equal to the sum of the rates.

**Theorem 2.10.** *Suppose for  $j \in I$ ,  $(N_j(t))_{t \geq 0}$  are independent Poisson processes with rates  $\lambda_j > 0$ , respectively, and  $\lambda := \sum_{j \in I} \lambda_j < \infty$ . Then*

$$N(t) := \sum_{j \in I} N_j(t)$$

*is a Poisson process with rate  $\lambda$ .*

*Proof.* Firstly, for  $0 = t_0 < t_1 < \cdots < t_n < \infty$ , we have

$$N(t_k) - N(t_{k-1}) = \sum_{j \in I} N_j(t_k) - N_j(t_{k-1}), \text{ for } j \in I.$$

Clearly,  $\{N(t_k) - N(t_{k-1}) : k = 1, \dots, n\}$  are independent and by Proposition 2.27, they are Poisson r.v.'s, with parameter  $\lambda(t_k - t_{k-1})$ , respectively. It's easy to see that for any  $\omega$  and  $t$ , there are finite many  $j \in I$ ,  $N_j(t) > 0$ , thus  $N(t)$  is right-continuous.  $\square$

### 2.2.4 Conditioning

Next we establish some relations between Poisson processes and the uniform distribution. Notice that the conclusions are independent of the rate of the process considered. The results say in effect that the jumps of a Poisson process are as randomly distributed as possible.

**Theorem 2.11.** Let  $(N_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be a Poisson process. Then, conditional on the event  $\{X_t = n\}$ , the jump times  $J_1, \dots, J_n$  have joint density function

$$f(t_1, \dots, t_n) = \frac{n!}{t^n} 1_{\{0 < t_1 < \dots < t_n < t\}} \quad (2.8)$$

Thus, conditional on  $\{N_t = n\}$ , the jump times  $J_1, \dots, J_n$  have the same distribution as an ordered sample of size  $n$  from the uniform  $(0, t)$ .

*Proof.* To compute the joint density, we need to find some  $f$  such that for all  $A \in \mathcal{B}^n$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}((J_1, \dots, J_n) \in A \mid N_t = n) = \int_A f(t_1, \dots, t_n) dt_1 \dots dt_n.$$

First, we compute the joint density for  $(J_1, \dots, J_n)$ . Since the holding times  $S_1, \dots, S_{n+1}$  have joint density function

$$\lambda^{n+1} e^{-\lambda(s_1 + \dots + s_{n+1})} 1_{\{s_1, \dots, s_{n+1} > 0\}},$$

so the jump times  $J_1, \dots, J_{n+1}$  have joint density function

$$\lambda^{n+1} e^{-\lambda t_{n+1}} 1_{\{0 < t_1 < \dots < t_{n+1}\}},$$

hence

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}((J_1, \dots, J_n) \in A \mid X_t = n) \\ &= \frac{\mathbb{P}((J_1, \dots, J_n) \in A \text{ and } J_n \leq t < J_{n+1})}{\mathbb{P}(X_t = n)} \\ &= \frac{\lambda^n \exp\{-\lambda t\}}{(\lambda t)^n / n! \exp\{-\lambda t\}} \int_A 1_{\{0 < t_1 < \dots < t_n < t\}} dt_1 \dots dt_n \\ &= \int_A \frac{n!}{t^n} 1_{\{0 < t_1 < \dots < t_n < t\}} dt_1 \dots dt_n \end{aligned}$$

as required. □

**Corollary 2.12.** If  $s < t$  and  $0 \leq m \leq n$ , then

$$\mathbb{P}(N(s) = m \mid N(t) = n) = \binom{n}{m} \left(\frac{s}{t}\right)^m \left(1 - \frac{s}{t}\right)^{n-m} \quad (2.9)$$

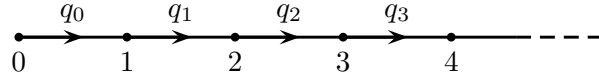
Or, conditional on  $N(t) = n$ , the distribution of  $N(s)$  is binomial  $(n, s/t)$ .

## 2.3 Birth processes

A birth process is a generalization of a Poisson process in which the parameter  $\lambda$  is allowed to depend on the current state of the process. The data for a birth process consist of *birth rates*  $q_j \geq 0$  where  $j \in \mathbb{N}$ .

We begin with a definition in terms of jump chain and holding times. A minimal right-continuous process  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  with values in  $\{0, 1, 2, \dots\} \cup \{\infty\}$  is a **birth process of rates**  $(q_j)_{j \geq 0}$  if, conditional on  $X_0 = i$ , its holding times  $S_1, S_2, \dots$  are independent exponential random variables of parameters  $q_i, q_{i+1}, \dots$ , respectively, and its jump chain is given by  $Y_n = i + n$ .

The flow diagram and the Q-matrix is given by



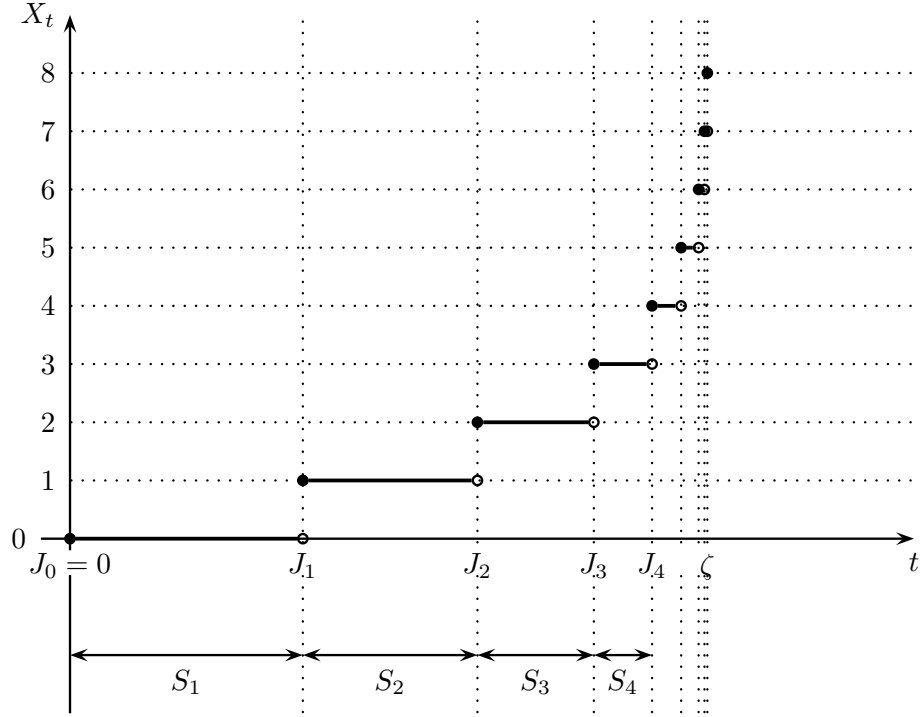
and

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} -q_0 & q_0 & & & \\ & -q_1 & q_1 & & \\ & & -q_2 & q_2 & \\ & & & \ddots & \ddots \\ & & & & \ddots & \ddots \end{pmatrix}$$

Much of the theory associated with the Poisson process goes through for birth processes with little change, except that some calculations can no longer be made so explicitly.

**Explosion of birth process** The most interesting new phenomenon present in birth processes is the possibility of explosion. For certain choices of birth rates, a typical path will make infinitely many jumps in a finite time, as

shown in the following diagram. The convention of setting the process to equal  $\infty$  after explosion is particularly appropriate for birth processes!



In fact, Theorem 2.13 tells us exactly when explosion will occur.

**Theorem 2.13.** *Let  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be a birth process of rates  $(q_j : j \geq 0)$  starting from 0.*

- (i) *If  $\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{q_j} < \infty$ , then  $\mathbb{P}(\zeta < \infty) = 1$ .*
- (ii) *If  $\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{q_j} = \infty$ , then  $\mathbb{P}(\zeta = \infty) = 1$ .*

*Proof.* Using Proposition 2.26. □

The proof of the Markov property for the Poisson process is easily adapted to give the following generalization.



**Theorem 2.14 (Markov property).** *Let  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be a birth process of rates  $(q_j : j \geq 0)$ . Then, conditional on  $X_s = i$ ,  $(X_{s+t})_{t \geq 0}$  is a birth process of rates  $(q_j : j \geq 0)$  starting from  $i$  and independent of  $(X_s : s \leq s)$*

*Proof.* Let  $\tilde{X}_t = X_{t+s}$  for each  $t \geq 0$ . Then  $(\tilde{X}_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is a right-continuous process valued in  $\{0, 1, 2, \dots\} \cup \{\infty\}$ . Denote  $(\tilde{J}_n)_{n \geq 0}$  the jump times of  $(\tilde{X}_t)_{t \geq 0}$  and

$$N(t) := \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 1_{\{\tilde{J}_n \leq t\}}, \quad \text{for all } t \geq 0.$$

Then  $\tilde{J}_0 = 0$  and

$$\tilde{J}_n = J_{N(s)+n} - s, \quad \text{for } n \geq 2.$$

The holding times of  $(\tilde{X}_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is given by

$$\tilde{S}_1 = J_{N(s)+1} - s; \quad \tilde{S}_n = S_{N(s)+n}, \quad \text{for } n \geq 2.$$

Hence, on  $\{N(s) = k\} = \{J_k \leq s < J_{k+1}\}$ ,

$$\tilde{S}_1 = J_{k+1} - s; \quad \tilde{S}_n = S_{k+n}, \quad \text{for } n \geq 2,$$

and

$$X_t = i - k + \sum_{n=1}^k 1_{\{\tilde{J}_n \leq t\}}, \quad \text{for } t \leq s.$$

We show now that  $(\tilde{X}_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is a birth process of rates  $(q_j : j \geq 0)$  and

$$\sigma(X_t : t \leq s) \text{ is independent of } \sigma(\tilde{X}_t : t \geq 0) = \sigma(\tilde{S}_n : n \geq 1),$$

First of all, it's easy to show that for each  $A \in \sigma(X_t : t \leq s)$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(\{\tilde{S}_1 > t_1, \dots, \tilde{S}_n > t_n\} \cap A \cap \{N(s) = k, X_s = i\}) \\ &= e^{-q_i t_1} \dots e^{-q_{i+n-1} t_n} \mathbb{P}(\cap A \cap \{N(s) = k, X_s = i\}) \end{aligned}$$

Then sum over  $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ , and divide  $\mathbb{P}(X_s = i)$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(\{\tilde{S}_1 > t_1, \dots, \tilde{S}_n > t_n\} \cap A \mid \{X_s = i\}) \\ &= e^{-q_i t_1} \dots e^{-q_{i+n-1} t_n} \mathbb{P}(A \mid \{X_s = i\}) \\ &= \mathbb{P}_i(S_1 > t_1, \dots, S_n > t_n) \mathbb{P}(A \mid X_s = i). \end{aligned}$$

We have completed the proof. □

We shall shortly prove a theorem on birth processes which generalizes the key theorem on Poisson processes. First we must see what will replace the Poisson probabilities. In Theorem 2.6 these arose as the unique solution of a system of differential equations, which we showed were essentially the forward equations. Now we can still write down the forward equation

$$P'(t) = P(t)Q, \quad P(0) = I$$

or, in components

$$p'_{i0}(t) = -p_{i0}(t)q_0, \quad p_{i0}(0) = \delta_{i0}$$

and, for  $j = 1, 2, \dots$

$$p'_{ij}(t) = p_{i,j-1}(t)q_{j-1} - p_{ij}(t)q_j, \quad p_{ij}(0) = \delta_{ij}$$

Moreover, these equations still have a unique solution; it is just not as explicit as before. For we must have

$$p_{i0}(t) = \delta_{i0}e^{-q_0 t}$$

which can be substituted in the equation

$$p'_{i1}(t) = p_{i0}(t)q_0 - p_{i1}(t)q_1, \quad p_{i1}(0) = \delta_{i1}$$

and this equation solved to give

$$p_{i1}(t) = \delta_{i1}e^{-q_1 t} + \delta_{i0} \int_0^t q_0 e^{-q_0 s} e^{-q_1(t-s)} ds$$

Now we can substitute for  $p_{i1}(t)$  in the next equation up the hierarchy and find an explicit expression for  $p_{i2}(t)$ , and so on.

**Theorem 2.15.** *Let  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be an increasing, right-continuous process with values in  $\{0, 1, 2, \dots\} \cup \{\infty\}$ . Let  $0 \leq q_j < \infty$  for all  $j \geq 0$ . Then the following three conditions are equivalent:*

- (i) (jump chain/holding time definition) conditional on  $X_0 = i$ , the holding times  $S_1, S_2, \dots$  are independent exponential random variables of parameters  $q_i, q_{i+1}, \dots$  respectively and the jump chain is given by  $Y_n = i + n$  for all  $n$ .
- (ii) (infinitesimal definition) for all  $t, h \geq 0$ , conditional on  $X_t = i$ ,  $X_{t+h}$  is independent of  $\{X_s : s \leq t\}$  and, as  $h \downarrow 0$ , uniformly in  $t$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbb{P}(X_{t+h} = i \mid X_t = i) &= 1 - q_i h + o(h), \\ \mathbb{P}(X_{t+h} = i + 1 \mid X_t = i) &= q_i h + o(h).\end{aligned}$$

- (iii) (transition probability definition) for all  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ , all times  $0 \leq t_0 \leq \dots \leq t_{n+1}$  and all states  $i_0, \dots, i_{n-1}, i, j$

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{t_{n+1}} = j \mid X_{t_n} = i, X_{t_0} = i_0, \dots, X_{t_{n-1}} = i_{n-1}) = p_{ij}(t_{n+1} - t_n)$$

where  $(p_{ij}(t))_{i,j \in \mathbb{N}}$  is the unique solution of the forward equations.

If  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  satisfies any of these conditions, then it is called a birth process of rates  $(q_j : j \geq 0)$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). If (i) holds, then, by the Markov property for any  $t, h \geq 0$  conditional on  $X_t = i$ ,  $X_{t+h}$  is independent of  $(X_s : s \leq t)$  and, as  $h \downarrow 0$  uniformly in  $t$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbb{P}(X_{t+h} \geq i + 1 \mid X_t = i) &= \mathbb{P}(X_h \geq i + 1 \mid X_0 = i) \\ &= \mathbb{P}(J_1 \leq h \mid X_0 = i) = 1 - e^{-q_i h} = q_i h + o(h)\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbb{P}(X_{t+h} \geq i + 2 \mid X_t = i) &= \mathbb{P}(X_h \geq i + 2 \mid X_0 = i) \\ &= \mathbb{P}(J_2 \leq h \mid X_0 = i) \leq \mathbb{P}(S_1 \leq h \text{ and } S_2 \leq h \mid X_0 = i) \\ &= (1 - e^{-q_i h})(1 - e^{-q_{i+1} h}) = o(h)\end{aligned}$$

which implies (ii).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). If (ii) holds, then certainly for  $k = i + 2, i + 3, \dots$

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{t+h} = k \mid X_t = i) = o(h) \quad \text{as } h \downarrow 0, \text{ uniformly in } t$$

Set  $p_{ij}(t) = \mathbb{P}(X_t = j \mid X_0 = i)$ . Then, for  $j = 1, 2, \dots$

$$\begin{aligned} p_{ij}(t+h) &= \mathbb{P}(X_{t+h} = j \mid X_0 = i) \\ &= \sum_{k=i}^j \mathbb{P}(X_t = k \mid X_0 = i) \mathbb{P}(X_{t+h} = j \mid X_t = k) \\ &= p_{ij}(t)(1 - q_j h + o(h)) + p_{i,j-1}(t)(q_{j-1} h + o(h)) + o(h) \\ \frac{p_{ij}(t+h) - p_{ij}(t)}{h} &= p_{i,j-1}(t)q_{j-1} - p_{ij}(t)q_j + O(h) \end{aligned}$$

As in the proof of Theorem 2.6 we can deduce that  $p_{ij}(t)$  is differentiable and satisfies the differential equation

$$p'_{ij}(t) = p_{i,j-1}(t)q_{j-1} - p_{ij}(t)q_j$$

By a simpler argument we also find

$$p'_{i0}(t) = -p_{i0}(t)q_0$$

Thus  $(p_{ij}(t) : i, j = 0, 1, 2, \dots)$  must be the unique solution to the forward equations. If  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  satisfies (ii) then certainly

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{t_{n+1}} = i_{n+1} \mid X_0 = i_0, \dots, X_{t_n} = i_n) = \mathbb{P}(X_{t_{n+1}} = i_{n+1} \mid X_{t_n} = i_n)$$

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). See the proof of Theorem 2.6.  $\square$

¶ **EXAMPLE 2.2** (Yule process). Consider a population in which each individual gives birth after an exponential time of parameter  $\lambda$ , all independently. If  $i$  individuals are present then the first birth will occur after an exponential time of parameter  $i\lambda$ . Then we have  $i + 1$  individuals and, by the memoryless property, the process begins afresh. Thus the size of the population performs a birth process with rates  $q_i = i\lambda$ . Let  $X_t$  denote the number of individuals at time  $t$  and suppose  $X_0 = 1$ . Write  $J = J_1$  for the time of the first birth.

(i) Note that

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbb{E} X_t &= \mathbb{E} X_t 1_{\{J \leq t\}} + \mathbb{E} X_t 1_{\{J > t\}} \\ &= \int_0^t \lambda e^{-\lambda s} \mathbb{E} [X_t \mid J = s] ds + e^{-\lambda t}\end{aligned}$$

Put  $\mu(t) = \mathbb{E} X_t$ , then  $\mathbb{E} [X_t \mid J = s] = 2\mu(t - s)$ , so

$$\mu(t) = \int_0^t 2\lambda e^{-\lambda s} \mu(t - s) ds + e^{-\lambda t}$$

and setting  $r = t - s$

$$e^{\lambda t} \mu(t) = 2\lambda \int_0^t e^{\lambda r} \mu(r) dr + 1$$

By differentiating we obtain  $\mu'(t) = \lambda\mu(t)$ , so the mean population size grows exponentially:

$$\mathbb{E} X_t = e^{\lambda t}.$$

(ii) Let  $\phi(t, z) = \mathbb{E} z^{X_t}$  for all  $t \geq 0$  and  $|z| < 1$ , then

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbb{E} z^{X_t} &= \mathbb{E} z^{X_t} 1_{\{J \leq t\}} + \mathbb{E} z^{X_t} 1_{\{J > t\}} \\ &= \int_0^t \lambda e^{-\lambda s} \mathbb{E} [z^{X_t} \mid J = s] ds + e^{-\lambda t}\end{aligned}$$

Note that  $\mathbb{E} [z^{X_t} \mid J = s] = \phi(t - s, z)^2$ , hence

$$\phi(t, z) = ze^{-\lambda t} + \int_0^t \lambda e^{-\lambda s} \phi(t - s, z)^2 ds$$

Make a change of variables  $u = t - s$  in the integral and deduce that

$$\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial t} = \lambda \phi(\phi - 1),$$

so

$$\phi(t, z) = \frac{ze^{-\lambda t}}{1 - z[1 - e^{-\lambda t}]}. \quad \cdot$$

We can deduce that, for  $n = 1, 2, \dots$

$$\mathbb{P}(X_t = n) = e^{-\lambda t} [1 - e^{-\lambda t}]^{n-1}.$$

## 2.4 Jump chain and holding times

This section begins the theory of continuous-time Markov chains proper, which will occupy the remainder of this chapter and the whole of the next. The approach we have chosen is to introduce continuous-time chains in terms of the joint distribution of their jump chain and holding times. This provides the most direct mathematical description. It also makes possible a number of constructive realizations of a given Markov chain, which we shall describe, and which underlie many applications.

Let  $I$  be a countable set. The basic data for a continuous-time Markov chain on  $I$  are given in the form of a  **$Q$ -matrix**. Recall that a  $Q$ -matrix on  $I$  is any matrix  $Q = (q_{ij})_{i,j \in I}$  which satisfies the following conditions:

- (i)  $q_{ij} \geq 0$  for all  $i \neq j$ ,
- (ii)  $-q_{ii} = \sum_{j \neq i} q_{ij} < \infty$  for all  $i$ .

We will sometimes find it convenient to write  $q_i$  as an alternative notation for  $-q_{ii}$ .

We are going to describe a simple procedure for obtaining from a  $Q$  matrix a stochastic matrix  $\Pi$ . The **jump matrix**  $\Pi = (\pi_{ij})_{i,j \in I}$  of  $Q$  is defined by

$$\pi_{ij} = \begin{cases} \frac{q_{ij}}{q_i} & \text{if } j \neq i \text{ and } q_i \neq 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } j \neq i \text{ and } q_i = 0 \end{cases} \quad \pi_{ii} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } q_i \neq 0 \\ 1 & \text{if } q_i = 0 \end{cases} \quad (2.10)$$

This procedure is best thought of *row by row*. For each  $i \in I$  we take, where possible, the off-diagonal entries in the  $i$  th row of  $Q$  and scale them so they add up to 1, putting a 0 on the diagonal. This is only impossible when the off-diagonal entries are all 0, then we leave them alone and put a 1 on the diagonal.

Here is the definition of a continuous-time Markov chain in terms of its jump chain and holding times.

**Definition 2.3.** A minimal right-continuous process  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  on  $I$  is called a **continuous-time Markov chain** with *initial distribution*  $\lambda$  and *generator matrix*  $Q$ , if its jump chain  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is discrete-time Markov( $\lambda, \Pi$ ) and for each  $n \geq 1$ , conditional on  $Y_0, \dots, Y_{n-1}$ , its holding times  $S_1, \dots, S_n$  are independent exponential random variables of parameters  $q(Y_0), \dots, q(Y_{n-1})$  respectively. We say  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is Markov( $\lambda, Q$ ) for short.

**Remark.** That is, given a set of the form

$$B = \{Y_0 = i_0, \dots, Y_n = i_n, S_1 > s_1, \dots, S_n > s_n\}$$

Our jump chain/holding time definition of the continuous-time chain  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is saying that for such events

$$\mathbb{P}(B) = \lambda_{i_0} \pi_{i_0 i_1} \dots \pi_{i_{n-1} i_n} e^{-q_{i_0} s_1} \dots e^{-q_{i_{n-1}} s_n} \quad (2.11)$$

Then, this definition uniquely determines a probability measure  $\mathbb{P}$  on

$$\sigma((Y_n)_{n \geq 0}, (S_n)_{n \geq 1}) = \sigma((X_t)_{t \geq 0})$$

Moreover, one can show that conditional on  $\{Y_{n-1} = i\}$ ,  $S_n$  is independent of  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  from (2.11).

**Strong Markov property** As for Poisson processes and birth processes, we shall deduce the Markov property from the jump chain/holding time definition. In fact, we shall give the strong Markov property as this is a fundamental result and the proof is not much harder. However, the proof of both results really requires the precision of measure theory, so we have omitted it, one can find a proof on *Markov Chains* written by J.R.Norris.

**Theorem (Strong Markov property).** Let  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be Markov( $\lambda, Q$ ) and let  $T$  be a stopping time of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$ . Then, conditional on  $T < \zeta$  and  $X_T = i$ ,

$$(X_{T+t})_{t \geq 0}$$

is Markov( $\delta_i, Q$ ) and independent of  $(X_t)_{t \leq T}$ .

### 2.4.1 Construct a Markov chain

**First construction** We can construct such a process as follows: let  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be discrete-time Markov( $\lambda, \Pi$ ) and let  $T_1, T_2, \dots$  be independent exponential random variables of parameter 1, independent of  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$ . Set

$$S_n = \frac{T_n}{q(Y_{n-1})}, \quad J_n = S_1 + \dots + S_n, \quad \text{for } n \geq 1. \quad (2.12)$$

and define

$$X_t = \begin{cases} Y_n & \text{if } J_n \leq t < J_{n+1} \text{ for some } n \\ \partial & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}, \quad \text{for } t \geq 0. \quad (2.13)$$

Then  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  has the required properties, that is one can check that,  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is minimal right-continuous process, its jump times is exactly  $(J_n)_{n \geq 0}$  and its jump chain is exactly  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 1}$ , and (2.11) holds.

We shall now describe two further constructions. You will need to understand these constructions in order to identify processes in applications which can be modelled as Markov chains. Both constructions make direct use of the entries in the  $Q$ -matrix, rather than proceeding first via the jump matrix.

**Second construction** We begin with an initial state  $X_0 = Y_0$  with distribution  $\lambda$ , and with an array  $\{T_n^j : n \geq 1, j \in I\}$  of independent exponential random variables of parameter 1. Then, inductively for  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , on  $\{Y_n = i\}$ , we set

$$S_{n+1}^j = \frac{T_{n+1}^j}{q_{ij}}, \quad \text{for } j \neq i, \quad S_{n+1} = \inf_{j \neq i} S_{n+1}^j \quad (2.14)$$

and

$$Y_{n+1} = \begin{cases} j & \text{if } S_{n+1}^j = S_{n+1} < \infty \\ i & \text{if } S_{n+1} = \infty \end{cases} \quad (2.15)$$

Then, conditional on  $Y_n = i$ , the random variables  $S_{n+1}^j$  are independent exponentials of parameter  $q_{ij}$  for all  $j \neq i$ . So, conditional on  $Y_n = i$ ,  $S_{n+1}$



is exponential of parameter  $q_i = \sum_{j \neq i} q_{ij}$ ,  $Y_{n+1}$  has distribution  $(\pi_{ij})_{j \in I}$ , and  $S_{n+1}$  and  $Y_{n+1}$  are independent, and independent of  $Y_0, \dots, Y_n$  and  $S_1, \dots, S_n$ , as required. This construction shows why we call  $q_i$  *the rate of leaving  $i$*  and  $q_{ij}$  *the rate of going from  $i$  to  $j$* .

Our third and final construction of a Markov chain with generator matrix  $Q$  and initial distribution  $\lambda$  is based on the Poisson process.

**Third construction** Imagine the state-space  $I$  as a labyrinth(迷宫) of chambers and passages, each passage shut off by a single door which opens briefly from time to time to allow you through in one direction only. Suppose the door giving access to chamber  $j$  from chamber  $i$  opens at the jump times of a Poisson process of rate  $q_{ij}$  and you take every chance to move that you can, then you will perform a Markov chain with  $Q$ -matrix  $Q$ .

In more mathematical terms, we begin with an initial state  $X_0 = Y_0$  with distribution  $\lambda$ , and with a family of independent Poisson processes

$$\left\{ \left( N_t^{ij} \right)_{t \geq 0} : i, j \in I, i \neq j \right\}$$

$\left( N_t^{ij} \right)$  having rate  $q_{ij}$ . Then set  $J_0 = 0$  and define inductively for  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,

$$J_{n+1} = \inf \left\{ t > J_n : N_t^{Y_n j} \neq N_{J_n}^{Y_n j} \text{ for some } j \neq Y_n \right\},$$

$$Y_{n+1} = \begin{cases} j & \text{if } J_{n+1} < \infty \text{ and } N_{J_{n+1}}^{Y_n j} \neq N_{J_n}^{Y_n j} \\ i & \text{if } J_{n+1} = \infty \end{cases}.$$

The first jump time of  $\left( N_t^{ij} \right)$  is exponential of parameter  $q_{ij}$ . So by Proposition 2.27, conditional on  $Y_0 = i$ ,  $J_1$  is exponential of parameter  $q_i = \sum_{j \neq i} q_{ij}$ , and  $Y_1$  has distribution  $(\pi_{ij} : j \in I)$ , and  $J_1$  and  $Y_1$  are independent.

Now suppose  $T$  is a stopping time of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$ . If we condition on  $X_0$  and on the processes  $\left( N_t^{kl} \right)_{t \geq 0}$  for  $(k, l) \neq (i, j)$ , which are independent of  $N_t^{ij}$  then  $\{T \leq t\}$  depends only on  $\{N_s^{ij} : s \leq t\}$ . So, by the strong Markov

property of the Poisson process  $\tilde{N}_t^{ij} := N_{T+t}^{ij} - N_T^{ij}$  is a Poisson process of rate  $q_{ij}$  independent of  $\{N_s^{ij} : s \leq T\}$ , and independent of  $X_0$  and  $(N_t^{kl})_{t \geq 0}$  for  $(k, l) \neq (i, j)$ . Hence, conditional on  $T < \infty$  and  $X_T = i$ ,  $(X_{T+t})_{t \geq 0}$  has the same distribution as  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  and is independent of  $\{X_s : s \leq T\}$ .

In particular, we can take  $T = J_n$  to see that, conditional on  $J_n < \infty$  and  $Y_n = i$ ,  $S_{n+1}$  is exponential of parameter  $q_i$ ,  $Y_{n+1}$  has distribution  $(\pi_{ij})_{j \in I}$ , and  $S_{n+1}$  and  $Y_{n+1}$  are independent, and independent of  $Y_0, \dots, Y_n$  and  $S_1, \dots, S_n$ . Hence  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is Markov  $(\lambda, Q)$  and, moreover,  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  has the strong Markov property.

The conditioning on which this argument relies requires some further justification, especially when the state-space is infinite, so we shall not rely on this third construction in the development of the theory.

## EXERCISE

¶ **EXERCISE 2.3.**  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is Markov  $(\lambda, Q)$ , let  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be the jump chain and  $(S_n)_{n \geq 0}$  the holding times. Then there exists  $T_1, T_2, \dots$  that are independent exponential random variables of parameter 1, independent of  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$ , satisfying

$$S_n = \frac{T_n}{q(Y_{n-1})} \quad \text{for } n \geq 1.$$

### 2.4.2 Explosion

We saw in the special case of birth processes that, although each holding time is strictly positive, one can run through a sequence of states with shorter and shorter holding times and end up taking infinitely many jumps in a finite time. This phenomenon is called *explosion*. Recall that for a process with jump times  $J_0, J_1, J_2, \dots$  and holding times  $S_1, S_2, \dots$ , the explosion time  $\zeta$  is given by

$$\zeta = \sup_n J_n = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} S_n$$

We say that a  $Q$ -matrix  $Q$  is **explosive** if, for the associated Markov chain

$$\mathbb{P}_i(\zeta < \infty) > 0 \quad \text{for some } i \in I \quad (2.16)$$

Otherwise  $Q$  is **non-explosive**. It is a simple consequence of the Markov property for  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  that under  $\mathbb{P}_i$  the process  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is Markov  $(\delta_i, Q)$ . The next result gives simple conditions for nonexplosion and covers many cases of interest.

**Theorem 2.16.** *Let  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be Markov $(\lambda, Q)$ . Then  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  does not explode if any one of the following conditions holds:*

- (i)  $\sup_{i \in I} q_i < \infty$ , particularly,  $I$  is finite.
- (ii)  $X_0 = i$ , and  $i$  is recurrent for the jump chain.

*Proof.* By Exercise 2.3, there exists  $T_1, T_2, \dots$  are independent exponential(1) and independent of  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$ . In cases (i), let  $q = \sup_i q_i < \infty$  then

$$q\zeta \geq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} T_n = \infty$$

In case (ii), since  $i$  is recurrent for  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$ , so  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  visits  $i$  infinitely often, at times  $N_1, N_2, \dots$ , say. Then

$$\zeta \geq \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} S_{N_k+1},$$

it suffices to show that  $(S_{N_k+1})_{k \geq 1}$  is i.i.d. r.v.'s sequence with distribution exponential( $q_i$ ). For any  $t_1, \dots, t_k > 0$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(S_{N_1+1} > t_1, \dots, S_{N_k+1} > t_k) \\ &= \sum_{n_1, \dots, n_k} \mathbb{P}(S_{n_1+1} > t_1, \dots, S_{n_k+1} > t_k; N_1 = n_1, \dots, N_k = n_k) \\ &= \sum_{n_1, \dots, n_k} \mathbb{P}(N_1 = n_1, \dots, N_k = n_k) e^{-q_i(t_1 + \dots + t_k)} = e^{-q_i(t_1 + \dots + t_k)}, \end{aligned}$$

as required. □

## 2.5 Forward and backward equations

Although the definition of a continuous-time Markov chain in terms of its jump chain and holding times provides a clear picture of the process, it does not answer some basic questions. For example, we might wish to calculate

$$p_{ij}(t) := \mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j).$$

In this section we shall obtain two more ways of characterizing a continuous-time Markov chain, which will in particular give us a means to find  $p_{ij}(t)$ . Let

$$P(t) := (p_{ij}(t))_{i,j \in I}$$

Then  $P(t)$  is a substochastic matrix (if  $Q$  non-explosive,  $P(t)$  is stochastic), and  $\{P(t)\}$  is called transition matrix.

**Proposition 2.17 (C-K equation).** *For transition matrix  $\{P(t)\}$ , we have  $P(0) = I$ , and for each  $t, s \geq 0$ ,*

$$P(t+s) = P(t)P(s). \quad (2.17)$$

*Proof.* For any  $i, j \in I$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} p_{ij}(t+s) &= \mathbb{P}_i(X_{t+s} = j) = \sum_{k \in I} \mathbb{P}_i(X_t = k, X_{t+s} = j) \\ &= \sum_{k \in I} \mathbb{P}_i(X_t = k) \mathbb{P}_i(X_{t+s} = j \mid X_t = k) \\ &= \sum_{k \in I} \mathbb{P}_i(X_t = k) \mathbb{P}_k(X_s = j) = \sum_{k \in I} p_{ik}(t) p_{kj}(s), \end{aligned}$$

and we have used Markov property.  $\square$

**Lemma 2.18.**  *$(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is Markov( $\lambda, Q$ ), let  $(J_n)_{n \geq 1}$  be the jump times. Then, as  $t \rightarrow 0$ ,*

$$(i) \quad \mathbb{P}_i(t < J_1) = 1 - q_i t + o(t).$$

$$(ii) \quad \mathbb{P}_i(J_1 \leq t < J_2) = q_i t + o(t).$$

$$(iii) \quad \mathbb{P}_i(t \geq J_2) = o(t).$$

*Proof.* (i) is trivial, since  $\mathbb{P}_i(t < J_1) = e^{-q_i t} = 1 - q_i t + o(t)$ .

To show (ii), note that for  $j \neq i$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}_i(J_1 \leq t < J_2, Y_1 = j) &= \int_0^t q_i e^{-q_i s} \pi_{ij} e^{-q_j(t-s)} ds \\ &= q_{ij} e^{-q_i t} \int_0^t e^{(q_j - q_i)s} ds = q_{ij} t + o(t), \end{aligned}$$

since  $\sum_{j \neq i} q_{ij} < \infty$ , we get

$$\mathbb{P}_i(J_1 \leq t < J_2) = \sum_{j \neq i} \mathbb{P}_i(J_1 \leq t < J_2, Y_1 = j) = q_i t + o(t).$$

Obviously, (i) and (ii) imply (iii). □

**Proposition 2.19.**  $\{P(t)\}$  satisfies

(i)  $P(t)$  is uniformly continuous. Indeed, for given  $i, j \in I$

$$|p_{ij}(t+h) - p_{ij}(t)| \leq 1 - e^{-q_i h} \quad \text{for all } t, h \geq 0, .$$

(ii)  $P'(0) = Q$ . In other words

$$\lim_{t \downarrow 0} \frac{p_{ij}(t) - \delta_{ij}}{t} = q_{ij} \quad \text{for all } i, j.$$

*Proof.* To show (i), note that

$$\begin{aligned} |p_{ij}(t+h) - p_{ij}(t)| &= \left| \sum_{k \in I} p_{ik}(h) p_{kj}(t) - p_{ij}(t) \right| \\ &= \left| \sum_{k \neq i} p_{ik}(h) p_{kj}(t) - (1 - p_{ii}(h)) p_{ij}(t) \right| \\ &\leq 1 - p_{ii}(h) \leq \mathbb{P}_i(J_1 \leq h) = 1 - e^{-q_i h}. \end{aligned}$$

To show (ii), note that for  $i \neq j$

$$p_{ij}(t) = \mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j, J_1 \leq t < J_2) + \mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j, J_2 \leq t),$$

we have shown the first term is  $q_{ij}t + o(t)$  and the second is  $o(t)$  in the proof of Lemma 2.18, so

$$\lim_{t \downarrow 0} \frac{p_{ij}(t)}{t} = q_{ij}$$

For  $j = i$ ,

$$1 - p_{ii}(t) = P_i(X_t \neq i) = \mathbb{P}_i(J_1 \leq t < J_2) + o(t) = q_i t + o(t),$$

as required.  $\square$

We come to the key result for continuous-time Markov chains. We shall present first a version for the case of finite state-space, where there is a simpler proof. In this case there are three alternative definitions, just as for the Poisson process.

**Proposition 2.20.** *Let  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be a right-continuous process with values in a finite set  $I$ . Let  $Q$  be a  $Q$ -matrix on  $I$  with jump matrix  $\Pi$ . Then the following three conditions are equivalent:*

- (i) *(jump chain/holding time definition) conditional on  $X_0 = i$ , the jump chain  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is discrete-time Markov( $\delta_i, \Pi$ ) and for each  $n \geq 1$ , conditional on  $Y_0, \dots, Y_{n-1}$ , the holding times  $S_1, \dots, S_n$  are independent exponential r.v.'s of parameters  $q(Y_0), \dots, q(Y_{n-1})$  respectively.*
- (ii) *(infinitesimal definition) for all  $t, h \geq 0$ , conditional on  $X_t = i$ ,  $X_{t+h}$  is independent of  $\{X_s : s \leq t\}$  and, as  $h \rightarrow 0$ , uniformly in  $t$ ,*

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{t+h} = j \mid X_t = i) = \delta_{ij} + q_{ij}h + o(h), \quad \text{for all } j.$$

(iii) (transition probability definition) for all  $n \geq 1$ , all times  $0 \leq t_0 < t_1 < \dots < t_{n+1}$  and all states  $i_0, \dots, i_{n-1}, i, j \in I$

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{t_{n+1}} = j \mid X_{t_n} = i, X_{t_0} = i_0, \dots, X_{t_{n-1}} = i_{n-1}) = p_{ij}(t_{n+1} - t_n)$$

where  $(p_{ij}(t) : i, j \in I, t \geq 0)$  is the (unique) solution of the forward equation

$$P'(t) = P(t)Q, \quad P(0) = I.$$

or the backward equation

$$P'(t) = QP(t), \quad P(0) = I.$$

If  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  satisfies any of these conditions then it is called a Markov chain with generator matrix  $Q$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Suppose (i) holds, then, as  $h \rightarrow 0$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}_i(X_h = i) &= \mathbb{P}_i(X_h = i, J_1 > h) + \mathbb{P}_i(X_h = i, J_2 \leq h) \\ &= e^{-q_i h} + o(h) = 1 + q_{ii}h + o(h), \end{aligned}$$

where we used  $\mathbb{P}_i(X_h = i, J_2 \leq h) \leq \mathbb{P}_i(J_2 \leq h) = o(h)$ . And for  $j \neq i$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}_i(X_h = j) &= \mathbb{P}_i(X_h = j, J_1 \leq h < J_2) + \mathbb{P}_i(X_h = j, J_2 \leq h) \\ &= q_{ij} \int_0^h e^{-q_i s} e^{-q_j(h-s)} ds + o(h) = q_{ij}h + o(h). \end{aligned}$$

Thus for every state  $j$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}_i(X_h = j) = \delta_{ij} + q_{ij}h + o(h).$$

Then by the Markov property, for any  $t, h \geq 0$ , conditional on  $X_t = i$ ,  $X_{t+h}$  is independent of  $\{X_s : s \leq t\}$  and, as  $h \rightarrow 0$ , uniformly in  $t$

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{t+h} = j \mid X_t = i) = \mathbb{P}_i(X_h = j) = \delta_{ij} + q_{ij}h + o(h).$$

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Set  $p_{ij}(t) = \mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j)$ . If (ii) holds, then for all  $t, h \geq 0$ , as  $h \rightarrow 0$ , uniformly in  $t$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} p_{ij}(t+h) &= \sum_{k \in I} \mathbb{P}_i(X_t = k) \mathbb{P}(X_{t+h} = j \mid X_t = k) \\ &= \sum_{k \in I} p_{ik}(t) (\delta_{kj} + q_{kj}h + o(h)) , \end{aligned} \tag{2.18}$$

since  $I$  is finite we have

$$\frac{p_{ij}(t+h) - p_{ij}(t)}{h} = \sum_{k \in I} p_{ik}(t) q_{kj} + o(1) .$$

So, letting  $h \downarrow 0$ , we see that  $p_{ij}(t)$  is differentiable on the right. Then by uniformity we can replace  $t$  by  $t-h$  in the above and let  $h \downarrow 0$  to see first that  $p_{ij}(t)$  is continuous on the left, then differentiable on the left, hence differentiable, and satisfies the forward equations

$$p'_{ij}(t) = \sum_{k \in I} p_{ik}(t) q_{kj}, \quad p_{ij}(0) = \delta_{ij}$$

since  $I$  is finite,  $p_{ij}(t)$  is then the unique solution by Proposition 2.30. Also, if (ii) holds, then

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{t_{n+1}} = j \mid X_{t_n} = i, X_{t_0} = i_0, \dots, X_{t_{n-1}} = i_{n-1}) = \mathbb{P}(X_{t_{n+1}} = j \mid X_{t_n} = i)$$

and, moreover, (ii) holds for  $(X_{t_n+t})_{t \geq 0}$  so, by the above argument,

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{t_{n+1}} = j \mid X_{t_n} = i) = p_{ij}(t_{n+1} - t_n)$$

proving (iii).

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). See the proof of Theorem 2.6. □

**Remark.** It should emphasized that we have supposed that  $I$  is a finite set in Proposition 2.20, how about  $I$  is infinite ?

In the proof above, we can see that (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii) still holds, but (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii) becomes problematic : in (2.18), when  $I$  is infinite, we can not guarantee that  $\sum_{k \in I} p_{ik}(t) r_{kj}(h)$  is  $o(h)$ , where  $r_{kj}(h) := p_{kj}(h) - \delta_{kj} - q_{kj}h = o(h)$ .



We turn now to the case of infinite state-space. The backward equation may still be written in the form

$$P'(t) = QP(t), \quad P(0) = I$$

only now we have an infinite system of differential equations

$$p'_{ij}(t) = \sum_{k \in I} q_{ik} p_{kj}(t), \quad p_{ij}(0) = \delta_{ij}$$

A solution to the backward equation is any matrix  $(p_{ij}(t) : i, j \in I)$  of differentiable functions satisfying this system of differential equations.

**Theorem 2.21.** *Let  $Q$  be a  $Q$ -matrix. Then the backward equation*

$$P'(t) = QP(t), \quad P(0) = I$$

*has a minimal non-negative solution  $\{P(t)\}$ . This solution forms a matrix semigroup*

$$P(s)P(t) = P(s+t) \quad \text{for all } s, t \geq 0.$$

We shall prove this result by a probabilistic method in combination with Theorem 2.22. Note that if  $I$  is finite we must have  $P(t) = e^{tQ}$  by Proposition 2.30. We call  $\{P(t) : t \geq 0\}$  the *minimal non-negative semigroup* associated to  $Q$ , or simply the *semigroup* of  $Q$ , the qualifications minimal and non-negative being understood.

Here is the key result for Markov chains with infinite state-space. There are just two alternative definitions now as the infinitesimal characterization becomes problematic for infinite state-space.

**Theorem 2.22.** *Let  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be a minimal right-continuous process with values in  $I$ . Let  $Q$  be a  $Q$ -matrix on  $I$  with jump matrix  $\Pi$  and semigroup  $\{P(t)\}$ . Then the following conditions are equivalent:*

- (i) *(jump chain/holding time definition) conditional on  $X_0 = i$ , the jump chain  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is discrete time Markov  $(\delta_i, \Pi)$  and for each  $n \geq$*

1, conditional on  $Y_0, \dots, Y_{n-1}$ , the holding times  $S_1, \dots, S_n$  are independent exponential random variables of parameters  $q(Y_0), \dots, q(Y_{n-1})$  respectively .

(ii) (transition probability definition) for all  $n \geq 1$ , all times  $0 \leq t_0 < t_1 < \dots < t_{n+1}$  and, all states  $i_0, \dots, i_{n-1}, i, j$

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{t_{n+1}} = j \mid X_{t_n} = i, X_{t_0} = i_0, \dots, X_{t_{n-1}} = i_{n-1}) = p_{ij}(t_{n+1} - t_n) .$$

If  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  satisfies any of these conditions then it is called a Markov chain with generator matrix  $Q$  .

*Proof of Theorem 2.21 and 2.22 .* We know that there exists a process  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  satisfying (i). So let us define  $P(t) = (p_{ij}(t))$  by

$$p_{ij}(t) = \mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j) .$$

**Step 1.** We show that  $\{P(t)\}$  satisfies the backward equation.

Conditional on  $X_0 = i$  we have  $J_1 \sim \text{Exp}(q_i)$  and  $X_{J_1} \sim (\pi_{ik})_{k \in I}$ . Then conditional on  $J_1 = s$  and  $X_{J_1} = k$  we have  $(X_{s+t})_{t \geq 0} \sim \text{Markov}(\delta_k, Q)$ . So

$$\mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j, t < J_1) = e^{-q_i t} \delta_{ij}$$

and

$$\mathbb{P}_i(J_1 \leq t, X_{J_1} = k, X_t = j) = \int_0^t q_i e^{-q_i s} \pi_{ik} p_{kj}(t-s) ds$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} p_{ij}(t) &= \mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j, t < J_1) + \sum_{k \neq i} \mathbb{P}_i(J_1 \leq t, X_{J_1} = k, X_t = j) \\ &= e^{-q_i t} \delta_{ij} + \sum_{k \neq i} \int_0^t q_i e^{-q_i s} \pi_{ik} p_{kj}(t-s) ds \end{aligned} \quad (2.19)$$

Make a change of variable  $u = t - s$  in each of the integrals, interchange sum and integral by monotone convergence and multiply by  $e^{q_i t}$  to obtain

$$e^{q_i t} p_{ij}(t) = \delta_{ij} + \int_0^t \sum_{k \neq i} q_i e^{q_i u} \pi_{ik} p_{kj}(u) du \quad (2.20)$$

This equation shows, firstly, that  $p_{ij}(t)$  is continuous in  $t$  for all  $i, j$ . Secondly, the integrand is then a uniformly converging sum of continuous functions, hence continuous, and hence  $p_{ij}(t)$  is differentiable in  $t$  and satisfies

$$e^{q_i t} (q_i p_{ij}(t) + p'_{ij}(t)) = \sum_{k \neq i} q_i e^{q_i t} \pi_{ik} p_{kj}(t)$$

Recall that  $q_i = -q_{ii}$  and  $q_{ik} = q_i \pi_{ik}$  for  $k \neq i$ . Then, on rearranging, we obtain

$$p'_{ij}(t) = \sum_{k \in I} q_{ik} p_{kj}(t). \quad (2.21)$$

So  $P(t)$  satisfies the backward equation. The integral equation (2.19) is called the integral form of the backward equation.

**Step 2.** We show that if  $\tilde{P}(t)$  is another non-negative solution of the backward equation, then  $P(t) \leq \tilde{P}(t)$ , hence  $P(t)$  is the minimal non-negative solution. The argument used to prove (2.19) also shows that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j, t < J_{n+1}) \\ = e^{-q_i t} \delta_{ij} + \sum_{k \neq i} \int_0^t q_i e^{-q_i s} \pi_{ik} \mathbb{P}_k(X_{t-s} = j, t-s < J_n) ds. \end{aligned} \quad (2.22)$$

On the other hand, if  $\tilde{P}(t)$  satisfies the backward equation, then, by reversing the steps from (2.19) to 2.21, it also satisfies the integral form:

$$\tilde{p}_{ij}(t) = e^{-q_i t} \delta_{ij} + \sum_{k \neq i} \int_0^t q_i e^{-q_i s} \pi_{ik} \tilde{p}_{kj}(t-s) ds. \quad (2.23)$$

If  $\tilde{P}(t) \geq 0$ , then

$$\mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j, t < J_0) = 0 \leq \tilde{p}_{ij}(t) \quad \text{for all } i, j \text{ and } t.$$

Let us suppose inductively that

$$\mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j, t < J_n) \leq \tilde{p}_{ij}(t) \quad \text{for all } i, j \text{ and } t,$$

then by comparing (2.22) and (2.23) we have

$$\mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j, t < J_{n+1}) \leq \tilde{p}_{ij}(t) \quad \text{for all } i, j \text{ and } t,$$

and the induction proceeds. Hence

$$p_{ij}(t) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j, t < J_n) \leq \tilde{p}_{ij}(t) \quad \text{for all } i, j \text{ and } t.$$

**Step 3.** Since  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  does not return from  $\infty$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} p_{ij}(s+t) &= \mathbb{P}_i(X_{s+t} = j) = \sum_{k \in I} \mathbb{P}_i(X_{s+t} = j | X_s = k) \mathbb{P}_i(X_s = k) \\ &= \sum_{k \in I} \mathbb{P}_i(X_s = k) \mathbb{P}_k(X_t = j) = \sum_{k \in I} p_{ik}(s) p_{kj}(t) \end{aligned}$$

by the Markov property. Hence  $\{P(t) : t \geq 0\}$  is a matrix semigroup. This completes the proof of Theorem 2.21.

**Step 4.** Suppose, as we have throughout, that  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  satisfies (i). Then, by the Markov property

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}(X_{t_{n+1}} = j \mid X_{t_n} = i, X_{t_0} = i_0, \dots, X_{t_{n-1}} = i_{n-1}) \\ = \mathbb{P}_i(X_{t_{n+1}-t_n} = j) = p_{ij}(t_{n+1} - t_n) \end{aligned}$$

so  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  satisfies (ii). We complete the proof of Theorem 2.22 by the usual argument that (ii) must now imply (i) : if (ii) holds, the finite-dimensional distributions of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is uniquely determined, and hence the distribution of jump chain and holding times.  $\square$

So far we have said nothing about the forward equation in the case of infinite state-space. Remember that the finite state-space results (Proposition 2.30) are no longer valid. The forward equation may still be written

$$P'(t) = P(t)Q, \quad P(0) = I$$

now understood as an infinite system of differential equations

$$p'_{ij}(t) = \sum_{k \in I} p_{ik}(t) q_{kj}, \quad p_{ij}(0) = \delta_{ij}$$

A solution is then any matrix  $(p_{ij}(t))_{i,j \in I}$  of differentiable functions satisfying this system of equations. We shall show that the semigroup  $\{P(t)\}$  of  $Q$

does satisfy the forward equations, by a probabilistic argument resembling Step 1 of the Proof of Theorem 2.21 and 2.22.

This time, instead of conditioning on the first event, we condition on the last event before time  $t$ . The argument is a little longer because there is no reverse-time Markov property to give the conditional distribution. We need the following time-reversal identity.

**Lemma 2.23.** *We have*

$$\begin{aligned} q_{i_n} \mathbb{P}(J_n \leq t < J_{n+1} \mid Y_0 = i_0, Y_1 = i_1, \dots, Y_n = i_n) \\ = q_{i_0} \mathbb{P}(J_n \leq t < J_{n+1} \mid Y_0 = i_n, \dots, Y_{n-1} = i_1, Y_n = i_0) \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* Conditional on  $Y_0 = i_0, \dots, Y_n = i_n$ , the holding times  $S_1, \dots, S_{n+1}$  are independent with  $S_k \sim \text{Exp}(q_{i_{k-1}})$ . So the left-hand side is given by

$$\int_{\Delta(t)} q_{i_n} \exp\{-q_{i_n}(t - s_1 - \dots - s_n)\} \prod_{k=1}^n q_{i_{k-1}} \exp\{-q_{i_{k-1}} s_k\} ds_k$$

where

$$\Delta(t) = \{(s_1, \dots, s_n) : s_1 + \dots + s_n \leq t \text{ and } s_1, \dots, s_n \geq 0\}.$$

On making the substitutions  $u_1 = t - s_1 - \dots - s_n$  and  $u_k = s_{n-k+2}$ , for  $k = 2, \dots, n$ , we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} q_{i_n} \mathbb{P}(J_n \leq t < J_{n+1} \mid Y_0 = i_0, \dots, Y_n = i_n) \\ = \int_{\Delta(t)} q_{i_0} \exp\{-q_{i_0}(t - u_1 - \dots - u_n)\} \prod_{k=1}^n q_{i_{n-k+1}} \exp\{-q_{i_{n-k+1}} u_k\} du_k \\ = q_{i_0} \mathbb{P}(J_n \leq t < J_{n+1} \mid Y_0 = i_n, \dots, Y_{n-1} = i_1, Y_n = i_0). \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

**Theorem 2.24.** *We have The minimal non-negative solution  $(P(t) : t \geq 0)$  of the backward equation is also the minimal non-negative solution of the forward equation*

$$P'(t) = P(t)Q, \quad P(0) = I$$

*Proof.* Let  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  denote the minimal Markov chain with generator matrix  $Q$ . By Theorem 2.22

$$\begin{aligned} p_{ij}(t) &= \mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j) \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{k \neq j} \mathbb{P}_i(J_n \leq t < J_{n+1}, Y_{n-1} = k, Y_n = j) . \end{aligned}$$

Now by Lemma 2.23 for  $n \geq 1$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathbb{P}_i(J_n \leq t < J_{n+1} \mid Y_{n-1} = k, Y_n = j) \\ &= \frac{q_i}{q_j} \mathbb{P}_j(J_n \leq t < J_{n+1} \mid Y_1 = k, Y_n = i) \\ &= \frac{q_i}{q_j} \int_0^t q_j e^{-q_j s} \mathbb{P}_k(J_{n-1} \leq t-s < J_n \mid Y_{n-1} = i) ds \\ &= q_i \int_0^t e^{-q_j s} \frac{q_k}{q_i} \mathbb{P}_i(J_{n-1} \leq t-s < J_n \mid Y_{n-1} = k) ds \end{aligned}$$

where we have used the Markov property of  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  for the second equality. Hence

$$\begin{aligned} p_{ij}(t) &= \delta_{ij} e^{-q_i t} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{k \neq j} \int_0^t \mathbb{P}_i(J_{n-1} \leq t-s < J_n \mid Y_{n-1} = k) \\ &\quad \times \mathbb{P}_i(Y_{n-1} = k, Y_n = j) q_k e^{-q_j s} ds \\ &= \delta_{ij} e^{-q_i t} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{k \neq j} \int_0^t \mathbb{P}_i(J_{n-1} \leq t-s < J_n, Y_{n-1} = k) q_k \pi_{kj} e^{-q_j s} ds \\ &= \delta_{ij} e^{-q_i t} + \int_0^t \sum_{k \neq j} p_{ik}(t-s) q_{kj} e^{-q_j s} ds \end{aligned} \tag{2.24}$$

where we have used monotone convergence to interchange the sum and integral at the last step. This is the integral form of the forward equation.

Now make a change of variable  $u = t - s$  in the integral and multiply by  $e^{q_j t}$  to obtain

$$p_{ij}(t) e^{q_j t} = \delta_{ij} + \int_0^t \sum_{k \neq j} p_{ik}(u) q_{kj} e^{q_j u} du \tag{2.25}$$

We know by equation (2.20) that  $e^{q_i t} p_{ik}(t)$  is increasing for all  $i, k$ . Hence either  $\sum_{k \neq j} p_{ik}(u) q_{kj}$  converges uniformly for  $u \in [0, t]$  or

$$\sum_{k \neq j} p_{ik}(u) q_{kj} = \infty \quad \text{for all } u \geq t$$

The latter would contradict (2.25) since the left-hand side is finite for all  $t$  so it is the former which holds. We know from the backward equation that  $p_{ij}(t)$  is continuous for all  $i, j$ ; hence by uniform convergence the integrand in (2.25) is continuous and we may differentiate to obtain

$$p'_{ij}(t) + p_{ij}(t) q_j = \sum_{k \neq j} p_{ik}(t) q_{kj} \quad (2.26)$$

Hence  $P(t)$  solves the forward equation.

To establish minimality let us suppose that  $\tilde{p}_{ij}(t)$  is another solution of the forward equation; then we also have

$$\tilde{p}_{ij}(t) = \delta_{ij} e^{-q_i t} + \sum_{k \neq j} \int_0^t \tilde{p}_{ik}(t-s) q_{kj} e^{-q_j s} ds$$

A small variation of the argument leading to (2.24) shows that, for  $n \geq 0$

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j, t < J_{n+1}) \\ &= \delta_{ij} e^{-q_i t} + \sum_{k \neq j} \int_0^t \mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j, t < J_n) q_{kj} e^{-q_j s} ds. \end{aligned} \quad (2.27)$$

If  $\tilde{P}(t) \geq 0$ , then

$$\mathbb{P}(X_t = j, t < J_0) = 0 \leq \tilde{p}_{ij}(t) \quad \text{for all } i, j \text{ and } t$$

Let us suppose inductively that

$$\mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j, t < J_n) \leq \tilde{p}_{ij}(t) \quad \text{for all } i, j \text{ and } t.$$

then by comparing (2.26) and (2.27) we obtain

$$\mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j, t < J_{n+1}) \leq \tilde{p}_{ij}(t) \quad \text{for all } i, j \text{ and } t,$$

and the induction proceeds. Hence

$$p_{ij}(t) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j, t < J_n) \leq \tilde{p}_{ij}(t) \quad \text{for all } i, j \text{ and } t.$$

□



## 2.6 Appendenix

### Exponential distribution

A random variable  $T : \Omega \rightarrow [0, \infty]$  has exponential distribution of parameter  $\lambda$  ( $0 \leq \lambda < \infty$ ) if

$$\mathbb{P}(T > t) = e^{-\lambda t} \quad \text{for all } t \geq 0$$

We write  $T \sim \text{Exp}(\lambda)$  for short. If  $\lambda > 0$ , then  $T$  has density function

$$f_T(t) = \lambda e^{-\lambda t} 1_{\{t \geq 0\}}.$$

and

$$\mathbb{E}T = \frac{1}{\lambda}, \quad \text{Var}(T) = \frac{1}{\lambda^2}.$$

The exponential distribution plays a fundamental role in continuous-time Markov chains because of the following results.

**Proposition 2.25 (Memoryless property).** *A random variable  $T : \Omega \rightarrow (0, \infty]$  has an exponential distribution if and only if it has the following memoryless property:*

$$\mathbb{P}(T > s + t \mid T > s) = \mathbb{P}(T > t) \quad \text{for all } s, t \geq 0$$

The next result shows that a sum of independent exponential random variables is either certain to be finite or certain to be infinite, and gives a criterion for deciding which is true. This will be used to determine whether or not certain continuous-time Markov chains can take infinitely many jumps in a finite time.

**Proposition 2.26.** *Let  $S_1, S_2, \dots$  be a sequence of independent random variables with  $S_n \sim \text{Exp}(\lambda_n)$  and  $0 < \lambda_n < \infty$  for all  $n$*

- (i) *If  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\lambda_n} < \infty$ , then  $\mathbb{P}(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} S_n < \infty) = 1$ .*
- (ii) *If  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\lambda_n} = \infty$ , then  $\mathbb{P}(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} S_n = \infty) = 1$ .*

*Proof.* (i) Suppose  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\lambda_n} < \infty$ . Then, by monotone convergence

$$\mathbb{E} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} S_n = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\lambda_n} < \infty.$$

and

$$\mathbb{P} \left( \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} S_n < \infty \right) = 1.$$

(ii) Suppose instead that  $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\lambda} = \infty$ . Then  $\prod_{n=1}^{\infty} (1 + \frac{1}{\lambda}) = \infty$ . By monotone convergence and independence

$$\mathbb{E} \left( \exp \left\{ - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} S_n \right\} \right) = \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{E} (\exp \{-S_n\}) = \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( 1 + \frac{1}{\lambda_n} \right)^{-1} = 0.$$

So

$$\mathbb{P} \left( \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} S_n = \infty \right) = 1. \quad \square$$

The following result is fundamental to continuous-time Markov chains.

**Proposition 2.27.** *Let  $I$  be a countable set and let  $T_k, k \in I$ , be independent random variables with  $T_k \sim \text{Exp}(q_k)$ . Suppose  $0 < q := \sum_{k \in I} q_k < \infty$ . Set  $T = \inf_k T_k$ . Then*

- (i) *the infimum is attained at a unique random value  $K$  of  $k$ , with probability 1, and*
- (ii)  *$T$  and  $K$  are independent, with  $T \sim \text{Exp}(q)$  and  $\mathbb{P}(K = k) = \frac{q_k}{q}$ .*

*Proof.* Set  $K = k$  if  $T_k < T_j$  for all  $j \neq k$ , otherwise let  $K$  be undefined. Then

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P}(K = k \text{ and } T \geq t) \\ &= \mathbb{P}(T_k \geq t \text{ and } T_j > T_k \text{ for all } j \neq k) \\ &= \int_t^{\infty} q_k e^{-q_k s} \mathbb{P}(T_j > s \text{ for all } j \neq k) \, ds \\ &= \int_t^{\infty} q_k e^{-q_k s} \prod_{j \neq k} e^{-q_j s} \, ds \\ &= \int_t^{\infty} q_k e^{-qs} \, ds = \frac{q_k}{q} e^{-qt}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence  $\mathbb{P}(K = k \text{ for some } k) = 1$  and  $T$  and  $K$  have the claimed joint distribution.  $\square$

**Lemma 2.28.** *Let  $S_1, S_2, \dots$  be independent exponential( $\lambda$ ). The sum  $T_n = S_1 + \dots + S_n$  has a gamma( $n, \lambda$ ) distribution. That is, the density function of  $T_n$  is given by*

$$f_{T_n}(t) = \lambda e^{-\lambda t} \cdot \frac{(\lambda t)^{n-1}}{(n-1)!} \quad \text{for } t \geq 0$$

and 0 otherwise.

**Proposition 2.29.** *Let  $S_1, S_2, \dots$  be independent exponential r.v.'s of parameter  $\lambda$ . Let  $V$  be an independent geometric r.v. with parameter  $p$ . Then  $T = \sum_{i=1}^V S_i$  has exponential distribution of parameter  $p\lambda$ .*

*Proof.* Using the preceding lemma.  $\square$

## Matrix exponentials

For any matrix  $Q = (q_{ij} : i, j \in I)$ , the series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{Q^k}{k!}$$

converges componentwise and we denote its limit by  $e^Q$ . Moreover, if two matrices  $Q_1$  and  $Q_2$  commute, then

$$e^{Q_1+Q_2} = e^{Q_1} e^{Q_2}$$

The proofs of these assertions follow the scalar case closely and are given in Suppose then that we can find a matrix  $Q$  with  $e^Q = P$  Then

$$e^{nQ} = (e^Q)^n = P^n$$

so  $(e^{tQ} : t \geq 0)$  fills in the gaps in the discrete sequence.

**Proposition 2.30.** *Let  $Q$  be a matrix on a finite set  $I$ . Set  $P(t) = e^{tQ}$ . Then  $\{P(t) : t \geq 0\}$  has the following properties:*

(i)  $P(s+t) = P(s)P(t)$  for all  $s, t$  (semigroup property);

(ii)  $(P(t) : t \geq 0)$  is the unique solution to the forward equation

$$\frac{d}{dt}P(t) = P(t)Q, \quad P(0) = I.$$

(iii)  $(P(t) : t \geq 0)$  is the unique solution to the backward equation

$$\frac{d}{dt}P(t) = QP(t), \quad P(0) = I.$$

(iv) for  $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ , we have

$$\left( \frac{d}{dt} \right)^k \Big|_{t=0} P(t) = Q^k.$$

*Proof.* For any  $s, t \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $sQ$  and  $tQ$  commute, so

$$e^{sQ}e^{tQ} = e^{(s+t)Q}$$

proving the semigroup property. The matrix-valued power series

$$P(t) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(tQ)^k}{k!}$$

has infinite radius of convergence. So each component is differentiable with derivative given by term-by-term differentiation:

$$P'(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{t^{k-1}Q^k}{(k-1)!} = P(t)Q = QP(t)$$

Hence  $P(t)$  satisfies the forward and backward equations. Moreover by repeated term-by-term differentiation we obtain (iv). It remains to show that  $P(t)$  is the only solution of the forward and backward equations. But if  $M(t)$  satisfies the forward equation, then

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt} (M(t)e^{-tQ}) &= \left( \frac{d}{dt}M(t) \right) e^{-tQ} + M(t) \left( \frac{d}{dt}e^{-tQ} \right) \\ &= M(t)Qe^{-tQ} + M(t)(-Q)e^{-tQ} = 0 \end{aligned}$$

so  $M(t)e^{-tQ}$  is constant, and so  $M(t) = P(t)$ . A similar argument proves uniqueness for the backward equation.  $\square$

## Chapter 3

# Continuous-time Markov chains(II)

This chapter brings together the discrete-time and continuous-time theories, allowing us to deduce analogues, for continuous-time chains, of all the results given in Chapter 1. A reasonable understanding of Chapter 1 is required here, but, given such an understanding, this chapter should look reassuringly familiar.

### 3.1 Basic properties

#### 3.1.1 Class structure

A first step in the analysis of a continuous-time Markov chain  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is to identify its class structure. We emphasise that we deal only with minimal chains, those that die after explosion. Then the class structure is simply the discrete-time class structure of the jump chain  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$ , as discussed in [Subection 1.1.3](#) before.

We say that  $i$  **leads to**  $j$  and write  $i \rightarrow j$ , if

$$\mathbb{P}_i(X_t = j \text{ for some } t \geq 0) > 0$$

We say  $i$  **communicates with**  $j$  and write  $i \leftrightarrow j$  if both  $i \rightarrow j$  and  $j \rightarrow i$ . The notions of *communicating class*, *closed class*, *absorbing state* and *irreducibility* are inherited from the jump chain.

**Theorem 3.1.** *For distinct states  $i$  and  $j$ , the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $i \rightarrow j$  ;
- (ii)  $i \rightarrow j$  for the jump chain ;
- (iii)  $q_{i_0 i_1} q_{i_1 i_2} \cdots q_{i_{n-1} i_n} > 0$  for some states  $i_0, i_1, \dots, i_n$  with  $i_0 = i$  and  $i_n = j$ .
- (iv)  $p_{ij}(t) > 0$  for all  $t > 0$ .
- (v)  $p_{ij}(t) > 0$  for some  $t > 0$ .

*Proof.* Implications (iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (v)  $\Rightarrow$  (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii) are clear.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii).  $i \rightarrow j$  for the jump chain, then there are states  $i_0, i_1, \dots, i_n$  with  $i_0 = i, i_n = j$  and  $\pi_{i_0 i_1} \pi_{i_1 i_2} \cdots \pi_{i_{n-1} i_n} > 0$ , which implies (iii).

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iv). If  $q_{ij} > 0$ , then

$$p_{ij}(t) \geq \mathbb{P}_i(Y_1 = j, J_1 \leq t, S_2 > t) = (1 - e^{-q_i t}) \pi_{ij} e^{-q_j t} > 0.$$

for all  $t > 0$ , so if (iii) holds, then

$$p_{ij}(t) \geq p_{i_0 i_1}(t/n) \cdots p_{i_{n-1} i_n}(t/n) > 0$$

for all  $t > 0$ , and (iv) holds. □

### 3.1.2 Hitting probabilities

Let  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be a Markov chain with generator matrix  $Q$ . The hitting time of a subset  $A$  of  $I$  is the random variable  $\tau_A$  defined by

$$\tau_A(\omega) = \inf\{t \geq 0 : X_t(\omega) \in A\}$$

with the usual convention that  $\inf \emptyset = \infty$ . We emphasise that  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is minimal. So if  $\tau_A^{(Y)}$  is the hitting time of  $A$  for the jump chain, then

$$\left\{ \tau_A^{(Y)} < \infty \right\} = \left\{ \tau_A < \infty \right\}$$

and on this set we have

$$\tau_A = J_{\tau_A}^{(Y)}$$

The probability, starting from  $i$ , that  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  ever hits  $A$  is then

$$h_i = \mathbb{P}_i(\tau_A < \infty) = \mathbb{P}_i\left(\tau_A^{(Y)} < \infty\right)$$

When  $A$  is a closed class,  $h_i$  is called the *absorption probability*. Since the hitting probabilities are those of the jump chain we can calculate them as in [Section 1.2](#).

**Theorem 3.2.** *The vector of hitting probabilities  $(h_i)_{i \in I}$  is the minimal non-negative solution to the system of linear equations*

$$\begin{cases} h_i = 1, & \text{for } i \in A. \\ h_i = \sum_{j \in S} \pi_{ij} h_j, & \text{for } i \notin A. \end{cases} \quad (3.1)$$

*Proof.* Apply [Theorem 1.8](#) to the jump chain.  $\square$

### 3.1.3 Hitting times

The average time taken, starting from  $i$ , for  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  to reach  $A$  is given by

$$t_i = \mathbb{E}_i(\tau_A), \quad \text{for } i \in I.$$

In calculating  $t_i$  we have to take account of the holding times so the relationship to the discrete-time case is not quite as simple.

**Theorem 3.3.**  *$Q$  is non-explosive. The vector of mean hitting times  $(t_i)_{i \in I}$  is the minimal non-negative solution to the system of linear equations*

$$\begin{cases} t_i = 0, & \text{for } i \in A. \\ t_i = \frac{1}{q_i} + \sum_{j \neq i} \pi_{ij} t_j, & \text{for } i \notin A. \end{cases} \quad (3.2)$$



*Proof.* First we show that  $t = (t_i)_{i \in I}$  satisfies (3.2). If  $X_0 = i \in A$ , then  $\tau_A = 0$ , so  $t_i = 0$ . If  $X_0 = i \notin A$ , then  $\tau_A \geq J_1$ , and

$$t_i = \mathbb{E}_i(\tau_A) = \mathbb{E}_i(J_1) + \sum_{j \neq i} \mathbb{E}(\tau_A - J_1 \mid Y_1 = j) \mathbb{P}_i(Y_1 = j),$$

by the strong Markov property of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$ ,

$$\mathbb{E}_i(\tau_A - J_1 \mid Y_1 = j) = \mathbb{E}_j(\tau_A) = t_j,$$

thus

$$t_i = \frac{1}{q_i} + \sum_{j \neq i} \pi_{ij} t_j.$$

Suppose now that  $y = (y_i)_{i \in I}$  is another solution to (3.2). Then  $t_i = y_i = 0$  for  $i \in A$ . Suppose  $i \notin A$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} y_i &= \frac{1}{q_i} + \sum_{j \notin A} \pi_{ij} y_j = \frac{1}{q_i} + \sum_{j \notin A} \pi_{ij} \left( \frac{1}{q_j} + \sum_{k \notin A} \pi_{jk} y_k \right) \\ &= \mathbb{E}_i(S_1) + \mathbb{E}_i \left( S_2 1_{\{\tau_A^{(Y)} \geq 2\}} \right) + \sum_{j \notin A} \sum_{k \notin A} \pi_{ij} \pi_{jk} y_k. \end{aligned}$$

By repeated substitution for  $y$  in the final term we obtain after  $n$  steps

$$y_i = \mathbb{E}_i(S_1) + \cdots + \mathbb{E}_i \left( S_n 1_{\{\tau_A^{(Y)} \geq n\}} \right) + \sum_{j_1, \dots, j_n \notin A} \pi_{ij_1} \cdots \pi_{j_{n-1}j_n} y_{j_n}.$$

Since  $y$  is non-negative

$$y_i \geq \sum_{m=1}^n \mathbb{E}_i \left( S_m 1_{\tau_A^{(Y)} \geq m} \right) = \mathbb{E}_i \left( \sum_{m=1}^{\tau_A^{(Y)} \wedge n} S_m \right),$$

where we use the notation  $\tau_A^{(Y)} \wedge n$  for the minimum of  $\tau_A^{(Y)}$  and  $n$ . Now

$$\sum_{m=1}^{\tau_A^{(Y)}} S_m = \tau_A \wedge \zeta.$$

since  $Q$  is non-explosive, by monotone convergence,

$$y_i \geq \mathbb{E}_i(\tau_A \wedge \zeta) = \mathbb{E}_i(\tau_A) = t_i,$$

as required. □

## 3.2 Recurrence and transience

Let  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be Markov chain with generator matrix  $Q$ . Recall that we insist  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be minimal. We say a state  $i$  is **recurrent** if

$$\mathbb{P}_i(\{t \geq 0 : X_t = i\} \text{ is unbounded}) = 1.$$

We say that  $i$  is **transient** if

$$\mathbb{P}_i(\{t \geq 0 : X_t = i\} \text{ is unbounded}) = 0.$$

Note that if  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  can explode starting from  $i$ , then  $i$  is certainly NOT recurrent. The next result shows that, like class structure, recurrence and transience are determined by the jump chain.

**Theorem 3.4.** *State  $i \in I$  is recurrent for the jump chain  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$ , if and only if  $i$  is recurrent for  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose  $i$  is recurrent for  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$ . Starting at  $i$ ,  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  does not explode, so  $J_n \rightarrow \infty$  by Theorem 2.16. Also

$$X_{J_n} = Y_n = i$$

infinitely often, so  $\{t \geq 0 : X_t = i\}$  is unbounded, with probability 1.

Suppose  $i$  is transient for  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$ . If  $X_0 = i$  then

$$N = \sup \{n \geq 0 : Y_n = i\} < \infty$$

so  $\{t \geq 0 : X_t = i\}$  is bounded by  $J_{N+1}$ , which is finite with probability 1, because  $(Y_n)_{n \leq N}$  cannot include an absorbing state.  $\square$

**Corollary 3.5.** *We have,*

- (i) *every state is either recurrent or transient ;*
- (ii) *recurrence and transience are class properties.*

The next result gives continuous-time analogues of the conditions for recurrence and transience found in Theorem 1.15. We denote by  $\sigma_i$  the first passage time of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  to state  $i$ , defined by

$$\sigma_i = \inf \{t \geq J_1 : X_t = i\} .$$

**Theorem 3.6.** *The following dichotomy holds:*

- (i)  $q_i = 0$  or  $\mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_i < \infty) = 1 \Leftrightarrow i$  is recurrent  $\Leftrightarrow \int_0^\infty p_{ii}(t)dt = \infty$ .
- (ii)  $q_i > 0$  and  $\mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_i < \infty) < 1 \Leftrightarrow i$  is transient  $\Leftrightarrow \int_0^\infty p_{ii}(t)dt < \infty$ .

*Proof.* It suffices to show (i). Note that if  $q_i = 0$ , then  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  cannot leave  $i$ , so  $i$  is recurrent,  $p_{ii}(t) = 1$  for all  $t$ , and  $\int_0^\infty p_{ii}(t)dt = \infty$ .

Suppose then that  $q_i > 0$ . Let  $\sigma_i^{(Y)}$  denote the first passage time of the jump chain  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  to state  $i$ . Then, we have

$$\sigma_i = J_{\sigma_i^{(Y)}} ,$$

hence

$$\mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_i^{(Y)} < \infty) = \mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_i < \infty) .$$

Thus  $i$  is recurrent if and only if  $\mathbb{P}_i(\sigma_i < \infty) = 1$ , by Theorem 1.15 and the corresponding result for the jump chain.

**Claim:** Let  $G_{ij}^{(Y)}$  be the Green function for the jump chain, then

$$\int_0^\infty p_{ii}(t) dt = \frac{1}{q_i} G_{ii}^{(Y)} . \quad (3.3)$$

So  $i$  is recurrent if and only if  $\int_0^\infty p_{ii}(t) dt = \infty$ , by Theorem 1.15 and the corresponding result for the jump chain. To establish (3.3), we use Fubini's theorem,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^\infty p_{ii}(t) dt &= \int_0^\infty \mathbb{E}_i(1_{\{X_t=i\}}) dt = \mathbb{E}_i \int_0^\infty 1_{\{X_t=i\}} dt \\ &= \mathbb{E}_i \sum_{n=0}^\infty S_{n+1} 1_{\{Y_n=i\}} = \sum_{n=0}^\infty \mathbb{E}_i(S_{n+1} \mid Y_n = i) \mathbb{P}_i(Y_n = i) \\ &= \frac{1}{q_i} \sum_{n=0}^\infty \mathbb{P}_i(Y_n = i) = \frac{1}{q_i} G_{ii}^{(Y)} . \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

Let  $\mathfrak{T}_i$  denote the the time  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  stayed at  $i$ , that is

$$\mathfrak{T}_i = \int_0^\infty 1_{\{X_t=i\}} dt = \sum_{n=0}^\infty S_{n+1} 1_{\{Y_n=i\}}.$$

**Theorem 3.7.** Suppose  $X_0 = i$  and  $i$  is transient. Then  $\mathfrak{T}_i$  is a exponential random variable with parameter  $q_i(1 - \rho_{ii})$ , where  $\rho_{ii} = \mathbb{P}_i(T_i < \infty)$ .

*Proof.* Let  $V_i$  be the visiting times for the embedded chain to state  $i$ , that is

$$V_i = \sum_{n=0}^\infty 1_{\{Y_n=i\}}.$$

We have shown that in [Subsection 1.4.2](#),  $V_i \sim \text{geometric}(1 - \rho_{ii})$ .

Let  $\xi_0 = 0$  and  $\xi_k = \inf\{n \geq \xi_{k-1} + 1 : Y_n = i\}$  for  $k \geq 1$ , is the  $k$ -th passage time for  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  to state  $i$ . It's easy to see that

$$\mathfrak{T}_i = \sum_{k=1}^{V_i} S_{\xi_k+1}.$$

**Claim :** Let  $\{\eta_n\}$  be i.i.d. exponential r.v.'s with parameter  $q_i$ , and  $\{\eta_n\}$  is independent with  $V_i$ , then

$$\mathfrak{T}_i \stackrel{d}{=} \sum_{k=1}^{V_i} \eta_k.$$

To show this, note that

$$\mathbb{P}_i(S_{\xi_k+1} \leq t_k; 1 \leq k \leq n \mid V_i = n) = \mathbb{P}_i(\eta_k \leq t_k; 1 \leq k \leq n)$$

Thus, conditional on  $\{V_i = n\}$ ,  $\mathfrak{T}_i$  and  $\sum_{k=1}^{V_i} S_{\xi_k+1}$  have the same distribution. Since  $n$  is arbitrary, Which deduce that the claim above is true.

By Proposition [2.29](#),  $\sum_{k=1}^{V_i} \eta_k \sim \text{Exp}(q_i(1 - \rho_{ii}))$ , so the same for  $\mathfrak{T}_i$ .  $\square$

Finally, we show that recurrence and transience are determined by any discrete-time sampling of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$ , sometime is called the *h-skeleton*.

**Theorem 3.8.** Let  $h > 0$  be given and, set  $Z_n = X_{nh}$  for  $n \geq 0$ . Then  $i \in I$  is recurrent for  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  if and only if  $i$  is recurrent for  $(Z_n)_{n \geq 0}$ .

*Proof.* If  $i \in I$  is recurrent for  $(Z_n)_{n \geq 0}$ , obviously for  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$ ,

To show the necessity, note that, for  $t \in [nh, (n+1)h]$ , we have the estimate

$$p_{ii}((n+1)h) \geq e^{-q_i h} p_{ii}(t)$$

which follows from the Markov property. Then, by monotone convergence

$$\int_0^\infty p_{ii}(t) dt \leq h e^{q_i h} \sum_{n=1}^\infty p_{ii}(nh)$$

and the result follows by Theorem 3.6 and Theorem 1.15.  $\square$

### 3.3 Invariant distributions

In discrete time a measure is invariant if  $\lambda P = \lambda$ . However there is no first  $t > 0$ , in continuous time we need the stronger notion: a measure  $\lambda$  on  $I$  is said to be **invariant** for  $\{P(t) : t \geq 0\}$  if

$$\lambda P(t) = \lambda, \quad \text{for all } t \geq 0. \quad (3.4)$$

In addition, if  $\lambda$  is a distribution, it is called a **invariant distribution**.

The last condition is difficult to check since it involves all of the  $\{P(t)\}$  and, as we have seen in the previous section, the  $P(t)$  are not easy to compute.

**Proposition 3.9.** *Let  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be Markov( $\lambda, Q$ ) and  $\lambda$  is an invariant measure for the semigroup  $\{P(t)\}$ . Then for any  $s \geq 0$ ,  $(X_{t+s})_{t \geq 0}$  is also Markov( $\lambda, Q$ ).*

*Proof.* Firstly, for each  $i \in I$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}(X_s = i) = (\lambda P(s))_i = \lambda_i.$$

On the other hand, by the Markov property, we have that  $(X_{s+t})_{t \geq 0}$  is Markov( $\delta_i, Q$ ) conditional on  $\{X_s = i\}$ .  $\square$

Based on this property, invariant distribution is also called **stationary distribution**.

**Lemma 3.10.** *Let  $Q$  be irreducible. If  $\lambda$  is an invariant measure for  $\{P(t)\}$ , then  $\lambda = 0$ , or  $0 < \lambda < \infty$ . Particularly, if  $\lambda$  is an invariant distribution for  $P(t)$ , then  $\lambda_i > 0$  for all  $i$ .*

*Proof.* Since  $Q$  is irreducible, for any  $i, j \in I$ , we have

$$p_{ij}(t) > 0, \quad \text{for all } t > 0.$$

Thus if  $\lambda_i > 0$

$$\lambda_j \geq \lambda_i p_{ij}(t) > 0. \quad \square$$

### 3.3.1 Existence and uniqueness of invariant measures

In continuous-time, by iterating the equation (3.4) we get nothing. However, we still define

$$\Gamma_j^i := \mathbb{E}_i \int_0^{\sigma_i} 1_{\{X_s=j\}} ds = \int_0^\infty \mathbb{P}_i(X_s = j, s \leq \sigma_i) ds \quad \textcolor{blue}{\bullet}$$

for any  $i, j \in I$ . Then we will check if  $\Gamma^i = (\Gamma_j^i)_{j \in I}$  is a invariant measure for  $P(t)$ . Moreover, it's easy to see that  $\Gamma_i^i = \frac{1}{q_i}$ .

**Theorem 3.11.** *Suppose  $i$  is recurrent. Then  $\Gamma^i = (\Gamma_j^i)_{j \in I}$  is an invariant measure for  $\{P(t)\}$ .*

**Remark.** By the “*cycle trick*”, it's easy to see that the theorem is true.  $\Gamma_j^i$  is the expected time staying in state  $j$  in  $[0, \sigma_i]$ . Multiplying by  $P(t)$  moves us forward  $t$  in time so  $(\Gamma^i P(t))_j$  is the expected time staying in state  $j$  in  $[t, \sigma_i + t]$ . We need the condition  $i$  is recurrent, then  $\sigma_i < \infty$  and  $(X_{\sigma_i+t})_{t \geq 0}$  is Markov( $\delta_i, Q$ ), then the expected time staying in state  $j$  in  $[0, t]$  and  $[\sigma, \sigma_i + t]$  consides, so we have  $\Gamma_j^i = (\Gamma^i P(t))_j$ .

*Proof.* For any  $k \in S$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{j \in S} \Gamma_j^i p_{jk}(t) &= \sum_{j \in S} \int_0^\infty p_{jk}(t) \mathbb{P}_i(X_s = j, s \leq \sigma_i) ds \\ &= \sum_{j \in S} \int_0^\infty \mathbb{P}_i(X_s = j, X_{s+t} = k, s \leq \sigma_i) ds \\ &= \int_0^\infty \mathbb{P}_i(X_{s+t} = k, s \leq \sigma_i) ds \\ &= \int_t^\infty \mathbb{P}_i(X_u = k, u \leq \sigma_i + t) du \\ &= \mathbb{E}_i \int_t^{\sigma_i+t} 1_{\{X_u=k\}} du \end{aligned}$$

---

<sup>•</sup>In fact, we omitted that  $X : [0, \infty) \times \Omega \rightarrow I$ ;  $(t, \omega) \mapsto X_t(\omega)$  is measurable.

Since  $i$  is recurrent, under  $\mathbb{P}_i$  we have  $\sigma_i < \infty$ , and by strong Markov property,  $(X_{\sigma_i+t})_{t \geq 0}$  is Markov $(\delta_i, Q)$ , thus

$$\mathbb{E}_i \int_{\sigma_i}^{\sigma_i+t} 1_{\{X_u=k\}} du = \mathbb{E}_i \int_0^t 1_{\{X_{u+\sigma_i}=k\}} du = \mathbb{E}_i \int_0^t 1_{\{X_u=k\}} du = \Gamma_k^i.$$

So we get  $\sum_{j \in S} \Gamma_j^i p_{jk}(t) = \Gamma_k^i$ , in other words,  $\Gamma^i P(t) = \Gamma^i$  for all  $t \geq 0$ .  $\square$

**Remark.** Without the condition that  $i$  is recurrent, we can see  $\Gamma^i$  is not always invariant from the proof above.

Now we have a sufficient condition for the existence of invariant measure, how about uniqueness?

**Theorem 3.12.** *Let  $Q$  be irreducible and recurrent, then  $\{P(t)\}$  has an unique invariant measure up to scalar multiples.*

*Proof.* Since  $Q$  irreducible and recurrent, its  $h$ -skeleton is irreducible and recurrent. The invariant measure of  $P(t)$  is obviously invariant for  $P(h)$ , but  $P(h)$  has an unique invariant measure.  $\square$

### 3.3.2 Existence and uniqueness of invariant distributions

Firstly, if  $\{P(t)\}$  has an invariant measure  $\lambda$  and  $\Lambda := \sum_{i \in S} \lambda_i < \infty$ , we define

$$\tilde{\lambda}_i = \frac{\lambda_i}{\Lambda}, \quad \text{for all } i \in I.$$

Then  $\tilde{\lambda}$  is an invariant distribution for  $\{P(t)\}$ . Suppose that  $i$  is recurrent now,

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{j \in S} \Gamma_j^i &= \sum_{j \in S} \mathbb{E}_i \int_0^{\sigma_i} 1_{\{X_t=j\}} dt = \mathbb{E}_i \int_0^{\sigma_i} \sum_{j \in S} 1_{\{X_t=j\}} dt \\ &= \mathbb{E}_i \int_0^{\sigma_i} 1_{\{t < \zeta\}} dt = \mathbb{E}_i(\sigma_i \wedge \zeta). \end{aligned} \tag{3.5}$$



Note that the chain starting at  $i$  will not explode, thus

$$\sum_{j \in S} \Gamma_j^i = \mathbb{E}_i(\sigma_i), \quad (3.6)$$

is exactly **the expected return time to  $i$**  when starting from  $i$ , and write  $\mathbb{E}_i \sigma_i$  as  $m_i$  for short. We shall introduce the following definition .

**Definition 3.1.** We say a state  $i$  is **positive recurrent** if  $q_i = 0$ , or  $m_i < \infty$ , and a recurrent state which fails to have this stronger property is called **null recurrent**.

Thus, if  $I$  has a positive recurrent  $i$ , by normalizing  $\Gamma^i$ , we get an invariant distribution  $\lambda = \frac{\Gamma^i}{m_i}$ . The next theorem says that positive recurrence is a class property, and an irreducible chain has invariant distribution iff it is positive recurrent.

**Theorem 3.13.** *Let  $Q$  be irreducible. Then the following are equivalent:*

- (i) *every state is positive recurrent.*
- (ii) *some state  $i$  is positive recurrent.*
- (iii)  *$P(t)$  has an invariant distribution.*
- (iv)  *$P(t)$  has a unique invariant distribution  $\lambda$  and  $\lambda_i = \frac{1}{q_i m_i}$  for all  $i \in I$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii) is obvious.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). If  $i$  is positive recurrent, so  $Q$  is recurrent. So  $\Gamma^i$  is then invariant, and

$$\sum_{j \in I} \Gamma_j^i = m_i < \infty.$$

So  $\lambda = \frac{1}{m_i} \Gamma^i$  defines an invariant distribution for  $P$ .

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). 遍历定理. □

### 3.3.3 Jump chain

Note that  $\{P(t)\}$  satisfies the forward equation  $P'(t) = P(t)Q$ , thus if  $\lambda$  is an invariant measure,  $\lambda P(t) = \lambda$ , taking the derivative and supposing the order of summation and differentiation can be exchanged, we get

$$\lambda Q = \lambda P(t)Q = \lambda P'(t) = 0.$$

As we can see, the equation “  $\lambda Q = 0$  ” describes the balance of 速率流. Thus, it's natural to ask that, what is the relationship between these two equations

$$\lambda Q = 0 \quad \text{and,} \quad \lambda P(t) = \lambda \quad \text{for all } t.$$

A first result is that the equation  $\lambda Q = 0$  tie-up with measures invariant for the jump matrix.

**Theorem 3.14.** *Let  $Q$  be a  $Q$ -matrix with jump matrix  $\Pi$ .  $\lambda, \mu$  be two measures on  $I$ , such that  $\mu_i = \lambda_i q_i$ . Then  $\lambda$  is invariant for  $\{P(t)\}$  if and only if  $\mu$  is invariant for  $\Pi$ .*

*Proof.* Note that  $q_i (\pi_{ij} - \delta_{ij}) = q_{ij}$  for all  $i, j$ , so

$$(\mu(\Pi - I))_j = \sum_{i \in I} \mu_i (\pi_{ij} - \delta_{ij}) = \sum_{i \in I} \lambda_i q_{ij} = (\lambda Q)_j. \quad \square$$

**Corollary 3.15.**  *$Q$  is irreducible, and  $\lambda$  is a measure so that  $\lambda Q = 0$ , then either  $\lambda = 0$  or  $\lambda > 0$ .*

*proof.* If  $\lambda_i > 0$ , for any  $j$ , since  $Q$  is irreducible there exists  $i = i_0, \dots, i_n = j$  so that

$$q_{i_0 i_1} \cdots q_{i_{n-1} i_n} > 0.$$

Thus  $\lambda_j q_j \geq \lambda_{i_0} q_{i_0 i_1} \cdots q_{i_{n-1} i_n} > 0$ .  $\square$

*Second proof.* Let us exclude the trivial case  $I = \{i\}$ . Then we have  $q_i > 0$  for all  $i \in I$ . Since  $\mu$  is invariant for  $\Pi$ , and  $\Pi$  is irreducible, then either  $\mu = 0$  or  $\mu > 0$ , so the corollary follows.  $\square$

**Corollary 3.16.** *Suppose that  $Q$  is irreducible and recurrent. Then  $Q$  has an invariant measure  $\lambda$  which is unique up to scalar multiples.*

*Proof.* Let us exclude the trivial case  $I = \{i\}$ ; then irreducibility forces  $q_i > 0$  for all  $i$ . We have  $\Pi$  is irreducible and recurrent, so  $\Pi$  has an invariant measure  $\mu$ , which is unique up to scalar multiples. So, by Theorem 3.14 we can take  $\lambda_i = \frac{\mu_i}{q_i}$  to obtain an invariant measure unique up to scalar multiples.  $\square$

We will discuss the following three questions.

- What's the relationship between the invariant measures for Markov chain and that for jump chain ?
- What's the relationship between the invariant distributions for Markov chain and that for jump chain ?
- If  $\lambda$  is a distribution on  $I$ , can we use the equation " $\lambda Q = 0$ " to replace " $\lambda P(t) = \lambda, \forall t$ " ?

**Theorem 3.17.**  *$Q$  is irreducible and recurrent,  $\lambda, \mu$  are measures on  $I$  and  $\mu_i = q_i \lambda_i$  for all  $i \in I$ . Then we have*

$$\lambda P(t) = \lambda \text{ for all } t \geq 0 \Leftrightarrow \mu \Pi = \mu \Leftrightarrow \lambda Q = 0. \quad (3.7)$$

*Proof.* By Corollary 3.16, Theorem 3.11 and Theorem 1.22, it suffices to show that

$$\Gamma_j^i = \frac{\gamma_j^i}{q_j} \quad (3.8)$$

where,  $\gamma_j^i$  is the expected time in  $j$  between visits to  $i$  for the jump chain.

**Claim :** If  $Q$  is irreducible, then (3.8) holds for all  $i, j \in I$ .

To see this, denote by  $\sigma_i^{(Y)}$  the first passage time of the jump chain to state

$i$ . Using Fubini's theorem we have

$$\begin{aligned}\Gamma_j^i &= \mathbb{E}_i \int_0^{\sigma_i} 1_{\{X_s=j\}} ds = \mathbb{E}_i \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} S_{n+1} 1_{\{Y_n=j, n < \sigma_i^{(Y)}\}} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{E}_i \left( S_{n+1} \mid Y_n = j, n < \sigma_i^{(Y)} \right) \mathbb{P}_i \left( Y_n = j, n < \sigma_i^{(Y)} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{q_j} \mathbb{E}_i \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 1_{\{Y_n=j, n < \sigma_i^{(Y)}\}} = \frac{\gamma_j^i}{q_j}.\end{aligned}\quad \square$$

**Theorem 3.18.**  $Q$  is irreducible, then  $\lambda, \mu$  are measures on  $I$  and  $\mu_i = q_i \lambda_i$  for all  $i \in I$ .

- Suppose  $\lambda$  is the invariant distribution for  $\{P(t)\}$ , or equivalently,  $(X_t)$  is positive recurrent, and  $\mu$  can be normalized, then  $(Y_n)$  is positive recurrent.
- Suppose  $\mu$  is the invariant distribution for  $\Pi$ , or equivalently,  $(Y_n)$  is positive recurrent, and  $\lambda$  can be normalized, then  $(X_t)$  is positive recurrent.

*Proof.*  $(X_t)$  is positive recurrent or  $(Y_n)$  is positive recurrent both implies  $Q$  is recurrent, so by Theorem 3.17 the desired result is trivial.  $\square$

**Theorem 3.19.**  $Q$  is irreducible,  $\lambda$  is a distribution on  $I$ , then

$$\lambda P(t) = \lambda \text{ for all } t \Leftrightarrow \lambda Q = 0 \text{ and } Q \text{ is non-explosive.} \quad (3.9)$$

*Proof.* If  $\lambda$  is the invariant distribution for  $\{P(t)\}$ , then  $Q$  is recurrent, so  $Q$  is non-explosive. By Theorem 3.17,  $\lambda Q = 0$  follows.

If  $\lambda Q = 0$ , then by Theorem 3.14  $\mu$  is invariant for  $\Pi$ , where  $\mu$  defined by  $\mu_i = q_i \lambda_i$  for all  $i$ . So, in Section 1.5.2 we have shown that

$$\frac{\mu_j}{\mu_i} \geq \gamma_j^i \quad \text{for all } i, j.$$

Thus by (3.8),

$$\sum_j \Gamma_j^i = \sum_j \frac{\gamma_j^i}{q_j} \leq \sum_j \frac{\mu_j}{\mu_i} = \sum_j \frac{\lambda_j}{q_i \lambda_i} = \frac{1}{q_i \lambda_i} < \infty,$$

and since  $Q$  is non-explosive, by 3.5 we have

$$m_i = \sum_j \Gamma_j^i < \infty$$

So  $Q$  is positive recurrent, and hence recurrent, by Theorem 3.17  $\lambda$  is the invariant distribution for  $\{P(t)\}$ .  $\square$

**Counterexamples** First we give a counterexample such that we can not give up the condition that  $Q$  is non-explosive in Theorem 3.19.

¶ *EXAMPLE 3.1.  $Q$  is irreducible,  $\pi$  is a distribution on  $I$ ,  $\pi Q = 0$  but  $Q$  is explosive.*

Consider the birth-death process with the following diagram, where  $q_{i,i+1} = 2 \times 3^i$  and  $q_{i,i-1} = 3^i$  for  $i \geq 1$ . By detailed balance condition, we can find

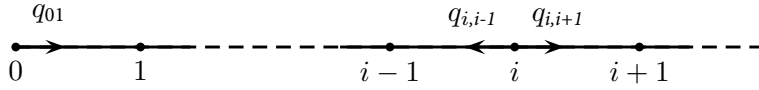


Figure 3.1: Birth-death process

the (unique) invariant distribution

$$\pi_i = \frac{1}{3} \times \left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^i, \text{ for all } i \geq 0.$$

However, we show that the Markov chain  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  will explode when starting at 0. Firstly, denote  $G_{ii}^{(Y)}$  the Green function of the jump chain  $(Y_n)$  at state

$i$ , then

$$\zeta = \int_0^\infty 1_{\{t < \zeta\}} dt = \int_0^\infty \sum_i 1_{\{X_t=i\}} dt = \sum_i \int_0^\infty 1_{\{X_t=i\}} dt.$$

Thus

$$\mathbb{E}_0 \zeta = \sum_i \mathbb{E}_0 \int_0^\infty 1_{\{X_t=i\}} dt = \sum_i \mathbb{E}_i V_i = \sum_i \frac{G_{ii}^{(Y)}}{q_i}.$$

It's easy to find that  $\{G_{ii}^{(Y)}\}_{i \geq 0}$  are uniformly bounded, thus  $\mathbb{E}_0 \zeta < \infty$  and  $Q$  is explosive.

¶ *EXAMPLE 3.2.  $Q$  is irreducible and positive recurrent, but  $\Pi$  is null recurrent.*

Consider the birth-death chain  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  with the following diagram, where  $b_0 = 1, b_1 = d_1 = \frac{1}{2}$  and  $b_i = \frac{i-1}{2i-1}, d_i = \frac{i}{2i-1}$  for  $i \geq 2$ .

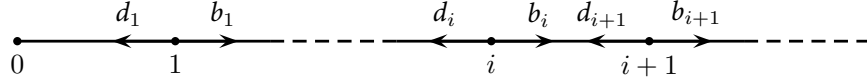


Figure 3.2: birth-death chain

Firstly, note that  $d_i > b_i$  for  $i \geq 2$ , so  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is recurrent by Example 1.14. To show it is null recurrent, we use detailed balanced conditions,

$$\pi_i \frac{i}{2i-1} = \pi_{i-1} \frac{i-2}{2i-3}, \quad \text{for } i \geq 3.$$

so

$$\frac{\pi_i}{\pi_2} = \prod_{k=3}^i \frac{k-2}{k} \frac{2k-1}{2k-3} = \frac{2}{i(i-1)} \times \frac{2i-1}{3} = O\left(\frac{1}{i}\right),$$

Thus  $\sum_i \pi_i = \infty$ ,  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is null recurrent.

However, Let  $(Y_n)$  be the jump chain of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  and  $q_i = i$  for all  $i \geq 1$ , the invariant distribution of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is  $\lambda_i = \frac{\pi_i}{q_i} = \frac{\pi_i}{i}$ , so we have

$$\frac{\lambda_i}{\lambda_2} = \frac{2}{i} \times \frac{2}{i(i-1)} \times \frac{2i-1}{3} = O\left(\frac{1}{i^2}\right),$$

Thus  $\sum_i \lambda_i < \infty$ ,  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is positive recurrent.

¶ *EXAMPLE 3.3.  $Q$  is irreducible and null recurrent, but  $\Pi$  is positive recurrent.*

Let  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be a positive recurrent birth-death chain with invariant distribution  $\pi$ . Let  $(Y_n)$  be the jump chain of  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  and  $q_i = \pi_i$  for all  $i \geq 0$ . Then  $\lambda_i = \frac{\pi_i}{q_i} = 1$  is an invariant measure for  $\{X_t\}$ , and therefore  $\{X_t\}$  is null recurrent.

### 3.4 Time reversal

Time reversal of continuous-time chains has the same features found in the discrete-time case. Reversibility provides a powerful tool in the analysis of Markov chains, as we shall see in Section 3.6. Note in the following result how time reversal interchanges the roles of backward and forward equations. This echoes our proof of the forward equation, which rested on the time reversal identity of Lemma 2.23.

A small technical point arises in time reversal: right-continuous processes become left-continuous processes. For the processes we consider, this is unimportant. We could if we wished redefine the time-reversed process to equal its right limit at the jump times, thus obtaining again a right-continuous process. We shall suppose implicitly that this is done, and forget about the problem.

**Theorem 3.20.** *Let  $Q$  be irreducible and non-explosive and suppose that  $Q$  has an invariant distribution  $\lambda$ . Let  $T \in (0, \infty)$  be given and let  $(X_t)_{0 \leq t \leq T}$  be Markov( $\lambda, Q$ ). Set  $\hat{X}_t = X_{T-t}$ . Then the process  $(\hat{X}_t)_{0 \leq t \leq T}$  is Markov( $\lambda, \hat{Q}$ ), where  $\hat{Q} = (\hat{q}_{ij})_{i,j \in I}$  is given by  $\lambda_i \hat{q}_{ij} = \lambda_j q_{ji}$ . Moreover,  $\hat{Q}$  is also irreducible and non-explosive with invariant distribution  $\lambda$ .*

*Proof.* Clearly,  $(\hat{X}_t)_{0 \leq t \leq T}$  is minimal right-continuous process with values in  $I$ . For  $0 \leq t_0 < \dots < t_{n+1} \leq T$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{P} \left( \hat{X}_{t_{n+1}} = j \mid \hat{X}_{t_n} = i, \hat{X}_{t_0} = i_0, \dots, \hat{X}_{t_{n-1}} = i_{n-1} \right) \\ &= \mathbb{P} \left( X_{T-t_{n+1}} = j \mid X_{T-t_n} = i, X_{T-t_0} = i_0, \dots, X_{T-t_{n-1}} = i_{n-1} \right) \\ &= \mathbb{P} \left( X_{T-t_{n+1}} = j \mid X_{T-t_n} = i \right) = \frac{\lambda_j p_{ji}(t_{n+1} - t_n)}{\lambda_i}. \end{aligned}$$

Define  $\hat{P}(t) = (\hat{p}_{ij}(t))_{i,j \in I}$  by

$$\lambda_i \hat{p}_{ij}(t) = \lambda_j p_{ji}(t) \quad \text{for all } i, j \in I,$$



then  $\widehat{P}(t)$  is an irreducible stochastic matrix with invariant distribution  $\lambda$  and we can rewrite the forward equation of  $\{P(t)\}$  transposed as

$$\widehat{P}'(t) = \widehat{Q}\widehat{P}(t).$$

But this is the backward equation for  $\widehat{Q}$ , which is itself a  $Q$ -matrix, and  $\widehat{P}(t)$  is then its minimal non-negative solution. Hence  $(\widehat{X}_t)_{0 \leq t \leq T}$  is Markov( $\lambda, \widehat{Q}$ ).

The chain  $(\widehat{X}_t)_{0 \leq t \leq T}$  is called the *time-reversal* of  $(X_t)_{0 \leq t \leq T}$ .  $\square$

**Reversibility and detailed balance** Let  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be Markov  $(\lambda, Q)$ , with  $Q$  irreducible and non-explosive. We say that  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is **reversible** if, for all  $T > 0$ ,  $(X_{T-t})_{0 \leq t \leq T}$  is also Markov( $\lambda, Q$ ).

A  $Q$ -matrix  $Q$  and a measure  $\lambda$  are said to be in detailed balance if

$$\lambda_i q_{ij} = \lambda_j q_{ji} \quad \text{for all } i, j.$$

Clearly, If  $Q$  and  $\lambda$  are in **detailed balance** then  $\lambda Q = 0$ .

**Theorem 3.21.** *Let  $Q$  be an irreducible and non-explosive  $Q$ -matrix and let  $\lambda$  be a distribution. Suppose that  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is Markov( $\lambda, Q$ ). Then the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is reversible;
- (ii)  $Q$  and  $\lambda$  are in detailed balance.

*Proof.* Both (i) and (ii) imply that  $\lambda$  is invariant for  $Q$ . Then both (i) and (ii) are equivalent to the statement that  $\widehat{Q} = Q$  in Theorem 3.20.  $\square$

## 3.5 Long-run behavior

We now investigate the limiting behaviour of  $p_{ij}(t)$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$  and its relation to invariant distributions. You will see that the situation is analogous to the case of discrete-time, only there is no longer any possibility of periodicity. We shall need the following estimate of uniform continuity for the transition probabilities.

### 3.5.1 Ergodic theorem

Long-run averages for continuous-time chains display the same sort of behaviour as in the discrete-time case, and for similar reasons. Here is the result.

**Theorem 3.22 (Ergodic theorem).** *Let  $Q$  be irreducible and let  $\lambda$  be any distribution.  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is Markov( $\lambda, Q$ ), then as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ ,*

$$\frac{1}{t} \int_0^t 1_{\{X_s=i\}} ds \rightarrow \frac{1}{q_i m_i} \quad \text{a.s.}$$

where  $m_i = \mathbb{E}_i(\sigma_i)$  is the expected return time to state  $i$ .

*Proof.* Suppose  $q_i > 0$  for all  $i \in I$ . If  $Q$  is transient then the total time spent in any state  $i$  is finite, clearly

$$\frac{1}{t} \int_0^t 1_{\{X_s=i\}} ds \leq \frac{1}{t} \int_0^\infty 1_{\{X_s=i\}} ds \rightarrow 0 = \frac{1}{q_i m_i}.$$

Suppose then that  $Q$  is recurrent and fix a state  $i$ . Then  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  hits  $i$  with probability 1 and the long-run proportion of time in  $i$  equals the longrun proportion of time in  $i$  after first hitting  $i$ . So, by the strong Markov property (of the jump chain), it suffices to consider the case  $\lambda = \delta_i$ .

Denote by  $T_i^{(n)}$  the time of the  $n$ th return to  $i$ , and by  $M_i^{(n)}$  the length of the  $n$ th visit to  $i$ . That is, for  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , setting  $T_i^{(0)} = 0$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} M_i^{(n+1)} &= \inf \left\{ t > T_i^{(n)} : X_t \neq i \right\} - T_i^{(n)}, \\ T_i^{(n+1)} &= \inf \left\{ t > T_i^{(n)} + M_i^{(n+1)} : X_t = i \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

Now, for  $T_i^{(n)} \leq t < T_i^{(n+1)}$  we have

$$\frac{M_i^{(1)} + \cdots + M_i^{(n)}}{T_i^{(n+1)}} \leq \frac{1}{t} \int_0^t 1_{\{X_s=i\}} ds \leq \frac{M_i^{(1)} + \cdots + M_i^{(n+1)}}{T_i^{(n)}}.$$

Denote by  $L_i^{(n)}$  the length of the  $n$  th excursion to  $i$ , that is,

$$L_i^{(n)} = T_i^{(n+1)} - T_i^{(n)}.$$

By the strong Markov property (of the jump chain) at the stopping times  $T_i^{(n)}$  for  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , we find that  $L_i^{(1)}, L_i^{(2)}, \dots$  are independent and identically distributed with mean  $m_i$ , and that  $M_i^{(1)}, M_i^{(2)}, \dots$  are independent and identically distributed with mean  $\frac{1}{q_i}$ . Hence, by the strong law of large numbers, as  $n \rightarrow \infty$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{T_i^{(n)}}{n} &= \frac{L_i^{(1)} + \cdots + L_i^{(n)}}{n} \rightarrow m_i \quad \text{a.s.} \\ \frac{M_i^{(1)} + \cdots + M_i^{(n)}}{n} &\rightarrow \frac{1}{q_i} \quad \text{a.s.} \end{aligned}$$

and hence

$$\frac{M_i^{(1)} + \cdots + M_i^{(n)}}{T_i^{(n)}} \rightarrow \frac{1}{m_i q_i} \quad \text{a.s.}$$

So on letting  $t \rightarrow \infty$  we have, with probability 1

$$\frac{1}{t} \int_0^t 1_{\{X_s=i\}} ds \rightarrow \frac{1}{m_i q_i}. \quad \square$$

**Corollary 3.23.** *Let  $Q$  be irreducible and positive recurrent with the invariant distribution  $\lambda$ .  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is Markov( $\lambda, Q$ ),  $f : I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a bounded function. Then as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ ,*

$$\frac{1}{t} \int_0^t f(X_s) ds \rightarrow \int_I f d\lambda \quad \text{a.s.}$$

*Proof.* In the positive recurrent case we can write

$$\frac{1}{t} \int_0^t f(X_s) ds - \int_I f d\lambda = \sum_{i \in I} f_i \left( \frac{1}{t} \int_0^t 1_{\{X_s=i\}} ds - \lambda_i \right).$$

where  $\lambda_i = \frac{1}{m_i q_i}$ . We conclude that

$$\frac{1}{t} \int_0^t f(X_s) ds \rightarrow \int_I f d\lambda \quad \text{as } t \rightarrow \infty.$$

with probability 1, by the same argument as was used in the proof of Theorem 1.35.  $\square$

### 3.5.2 Convergence to equilibrium

**Theorem 3.24 (Convergence to equilibrium).** *Let  $Q$  be an irreducible non-explosive  $Q$ -matrix with semigroup  $\{P(t)\}$ , and having an invariant distribution  $\lambda$ . Then for all states  $i, j$  we have*

$$p_{ij}(t) \rightarrow \lambda_j \quad \text{as } t \rightarrow \infty.$$

*Proof.* Let  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be Markov  $(\delta_i, Q)$ . Fix  $h > 0$  and consider the  $h$ -skeleton  $Z_n = X_{nh}$ . Then

$$\mathbb{P}(Z_{n+1} = j \mid Z_n = i, Z_0 = i_0, \dots, Z_{n-1} = i_{n-1}) = p_{ij}(h)$$

so  $(Z_n)_{n \geq 0}$  is discrete-time Markov  $(\delta_i, P(h))$ . By Theorem 3.1 irreducibility implies  $p_{ij}(h) > 0$  for all  $i, j$  so  $P(h)$  is irreducible and aperiodic. Clearly,  $\lambda$  is invariant for  $P(h)$ . So, by discrete-time convergence to equilibrium, for all  $i, j \in I$

$$p_{ij}(nh) \rightarrow \lambda_j \quad \text{as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

Thus we have a lattice of points along which the desired limit holds; we fill in the gaps using uniform continuity, Proposition 2.19. Fix a state  $i$ , given  $\epsilon > 0$  we can find  $h > 0$  so that

$$1 - e^{-q_i t} \leq \frac{\epsilon}{2} \quad \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq h$$

and then find  $N$ , so that

$$|p_{ij}(nh) - \lambda_j| \leq \epsilon/2 \quad \text{for } n \geq N$$

For  $t \geq Nh$  we have  $nh \leq t < (n+1)h$  for some  $n \geq N$  and

$$|p_{ij}(t) - \lambda_j| \leq |p_{ij}(t) - p_{ij}(nh)| + |p_{ij}(nh) - \lambda_j| \leq \varepsilon$$

by Proposition 2.19. Hence

$$p_{ij}(t) \rightarrow \lambda_j \quad \text{as} \quad n \rightarrow \infty. \quad \square$$

The complete description of limiting behaviour for irreducible chains in continuous time is provided by the following result. We do not give the details.

**Theorem 3.25.** *Let  $Q$  be an irreducible non-explosive  $Q$ -matrix and let  $\lambda$  be any distribution. Suppose that  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is Markov( $\lambda, Q$ ). Then for all states  $i$*

$$\mathbb{P}(X_t = i) \rightarrow \frac{1}{q_i m_i} \quad \text{as} \quad t \rightarrow \infty.$$

*Proof.* Let  $(Y_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be the embedded chain, and let

$$\sigma_i^{(Y)} = \inf\{n \geq 1 : Y_n = i\}.$$

It follows from Theorem 1.41, by the same argument we used in the proof Theorem 3.24,

$$\mathbb{P}(X_t = i) \rightarrow \frac{1}{\mathbb{E}_i \sigma_i^{(Y)}}$$

Note that  $m_i = \mathbb{E}_i \sigma_i = \frac{1}{q_i} \mathbb{E}_i \sigma_i^{(Y)}$ , we have completed the proof now.  $\square$

### 3.6 Queues and queueing networks

Queues form in many circumstances and it is important to be able to predict their behaviour. The basic mathematical model for queues runs as follows: there is a succession of customers wanting service; on arrival each customer must wait until a server is free, giving priority to earlier arrivals; it is assumed that the times between arrivals are independent random variables of the same distribution, and the times taken to serve customers are also independent random variables, of some other distribution.

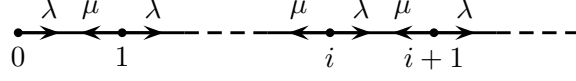
The main quantity of interest is the random process  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  recording the number of customers in the queue at time  $t$ . This is always taken to include both those being served and those waiting to be served.

In cases where inter-arrival times and service times have exponential distributions,  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  turns out to be a continuous-time Markov chain, so we can answer many questions about the queue.

In each example we shall aim to describe some salient features of the queue in terms of the given data of arrival-time and service-time distributions.

- We shall find conditions for the stability of the queue .
- In the stable case find means to compute the equilibrium distribution of queue length.
- We shall also look at the random times that customers spend waiting and the length of time that servers are continuously busy.

¶ *EXAMPLE 3.4* (M/M/1 queue). This is the simplest queue of all. The code means: memoryless inter-arrival times/memoryless service times/one server. Let us suppose that the inter-arrival times are exponential of parameter  $\lambda$ , and the service times are exponential of parameter  $\mu$ . Then the number of customers in the queue  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  evolves as a Markov chain with the following diagram:



- The M/M/1 queue thus evolves like a random walk, except that it does not take jumps below 0. We deduce that

- (i) if  $\lambda > \mu$  then  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is transient, that is  $X_t \rightarrow \infty$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ .  
Thus if  $\lambda > \mu$  the queue grows without limit in the long term ;
- (ii) when  $\lambda < \mu$ ,  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is positive recurrent with invariant distribution

$$\pi_i = \left(1 - \frac{\lambda}{\mu}\right) \left(\frac{\lambda}{\mu}\right)^i, \text{ for } i \geq 0.$$

- When  $\lambda < \mu$  the average number of customers in the queue in equilibrium is given by

$$\mathbb{E}_\pi(X_t) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_\pi(X_t \geq i) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{\lambda}{\mu}\right)^i = \frac{\lambda}{\mu - \lambda}.$$

- Also, the mean time to return to 0 is given by

$$m_0 = \frac{1}{q_0 \pi_0} = \frac{\mu}{\lambda(\mu - \lambda)},$$

so the mean length of time that the server is continuously busy is given by

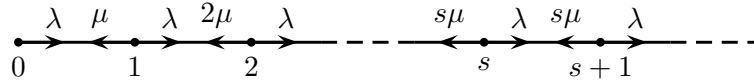
$$m_0 - \frac{1}{q_0} = \frac{1}{\mu - \lambda}.$$

- Another quantity of interest is the mean waiting time for a typical customer, when  $\lambda < \mu$  and the queue is in equilibrium. Conditional on finding a queue of length  $i$  on arrival, this is  $\frac{i+1}{\mu}$ , so the overall mean waiting time is

$$\frac{\mathbb{E}_\pi(X_t + 1)}{\mu} = \frac{1}{\mu - \lambda}.$$

Thus, once the queue size is identified as a Markov chain, its behaviour is largely understood. Even in more complicated examples where exact calculation is limited, once the Markovian character of the queue is noted we know what sort of features to look for transience and recurrence, convergence to equilibrium, long-run averages, and so on.

¶ *EXAMPLE 3.5* (M/M/s queue). This is a variation on the last example where there is one queue but there are  $s$  servers. Let us assume that the arrival rate is  $\lambda$  and the service rate by each server is  $\mu$ . Then if  $i$  servers are occupied, the first service is completed at the minimum of  $i$  independent exponential times of parameter  $\mu$ . The first service time is therefore exponential of parameter  $i\mu$ . The total service rate increases to a maximum  $s\mu$  when all servers are working. We emphasise that the queue size includes those customers who are currently being served. The queue size  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  performs a Markov chain with the following diagram:



So this time we obtain a birth-and-death chain. It is transient in the case  $\lambda > s\mu$  and otherwise recurrent. To find an invariant measure we look at the detailed balance equations

$$\pi_i q_{i,i+1} = \pi_{i+1} q_{i+1,i}$$

Hence

$$\frac{\pi_i}{\pi_0} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{i!} \left(\frac{\lambda}{\mu}\right)^i & \text{for } i = 0, 1, \dots, s \\ \frac{1}{s^{i-s} s!} \left(\frac{\lambda}{\mu}\right)^i & \text{for } i \geq s+1. \end{cases}$$

The queue is therefore positive recurrent when  $\lambda < s\mu$ . There are two cases when the invariant distribution has a particularly nice form: when  $s = 1$  we are back to Example 3.4 and the invariant distribution is geometric of



parameter  $\frac{\lambda}{\mu}$  :

$$\pi_i = (1 - \frac{\lambda}{\mu})(\frac{\lambda}{\mu})^i.$$

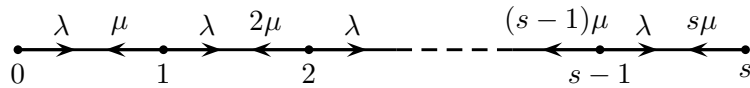
When  $s = \infty$  we normalize  $\pi$  by taking  $\pi_0 = e^{-\frac{\lambda}{\mu}}$  so that

$$\pi_i = e^{-\frac{\lambda}{\mu}} \frac{1}{i!} (\frac{\lambda}{\mu})^i.$$

and the invariant distribution is Poisson of parameter  $\frac{\lambda}{\mu}$ .

The number of arrivals by time  $t$  is a Poisson process of rate  $\lambda$ . Each arrival corresponds to an increase in  $X_t$ , and each departure to a decrease. Let us suppose that  $\lambda < s\mu$ , so there is an invariant distribution, and consider the queue in equilibrium. The detailed balance equations hold and  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is non-explosive, so by Theorem 3.21 for any  $T > 0$ ,  $(X_t)_{0 \leq t \leq T}$  and  $(X_{T-t})_{0 \leq t \leq T}$  have the same law. It follows that, in equilibrium, the number of departures by time  $t$  is also a Poisson process of rate  $\lambda$ . This is slightly counter-intuitive, as one might imagine that the departure process runs in fits and starts depending on the number of servers working. Instead, it turns out that the process of departures, in equilibrium, is just as regular as the process of arrivals.

¶ *EXAMPLE 3.6* (Telephone exchange). A variation on the M/M/s queue is to turn away customers who cannot be served immediately. This might serve as a simple model for a telephone exchange, where the maximum number of calls that can be connected at once is  $s$ : when the exchange is full, additional calls are lost. The maximum queue size or *buffer size* is  $s$  and we get the following modified Markov chain diagram :



We can find the invariant distribution of this finite Markov chain by solving the detailed balance equations, as in the last example. This time we

get a truncated Poisson distribution

$$\pi_i = \frac{(\lambda/\mu)^i}{i!} / \sum_{j=0}^s \frac{(\lambda/\mu)^j}{j!} \text{ for } i = 0, \dots, s.$$

By the ergodic theorem, the long-run proportion of time that the exchange is full, and hence the long-run proportion of calls that are lost, is given by

$$\pi_s = \frac{(\lambda/\mu)^s}{s!} / \sum_{j=0}^s \frac{(\lambda/\mu)^j}{j!}$$

This is known as *Erlang's formula*. <sup>②</sup>

¶ **EXAMPLE 3.7** (Queues in series). Suppose that customers have two service requirements: they arrive as a Poisson process of rate  $\lambda$  to be seen first by server  $A$ , and then by server  $B$ . For simplicity we shall assume that the service times are independent exponentials of parameters  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  respectively. What is the average queue length at  $B$ ?

Let us denote the queue length at  $A$  by  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  and that by  $B$  by  $(Y_t)_{t \geq 0}$ . Then  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is simply an M/M/1 queue. If  $\lambda > \alpha$ , then  $(X_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is transient so there is eventually always a queue at  $A$  and departures form a Poisson process of rate  $\alpha$ . If  $\lambda < \alpha$ , then, by the reversibility argument of Example 3.5, the process of departures from  $A$  is Poisson of rate  $\lambda$ , provided queue  $A$  is in equilibrium. The question about queue length at  $B$  is not precisely formulated: it does not specify that the queues should be in equilibrium; indeed if  $\lambda \geq \alpha$  there is no equilibrium.

Nevertheless, we hope you will agree to treat arrivals at  $B$  as a Poisson process of rate  $\alpha \wedge \lambda$ . Then, by Example 3.4, the average queue length at  $B$  when  $\alpha \wedge \lambda < \beta$ , in equilibrium, is given by  $(\alpha \wedge \lambda)/(\beta - (\alpha \wedge \lambda))$ . If, on the other hand,  $\alpha \wedge \lambda > \beta$ , then  $(Y_t)_{t \geq 0}$  is transient so the queue at  $B$  grows without limit.

---

<sup>②</sup>严格证明见应随考前题

There is an equilibrium for both queues if  $\lambda < \alpha$  and  $\lambda < \beta$ . The fact that in equilibrium the output from  $A$  is Poisson greatly simplifies the analysis of the two queues in series. For example, the average time taken by one customer to obtain both services is given by

$$\frac{1}{\alpha - \lambda} + \frac{1}{\beta - \lambda}.$$